

IDP 2026-2027

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

DRAFT

INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN AND BUDGET

2026-2027

VISSION AND MISSION	12
VISION	12
MISSION.....	12
CORE VALUES	12
THE MAYOR'S FOREWORD.....	13
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER	14
CHAPTER 1: THE PLANNING PROCESS	15
1.1 Introduction	15
1.2. Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives.....	16
1.3. District Development Model Waterberg District One Plan.....	25
1.4. Key aspects of the SONA and SOPA.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.5. Powers and functions of Local and District Municipalities	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.6. Municipal priority areas.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
1.7. IDP Planning Process	43
CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL PROFILE AND SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS.....	61
2.1 Municipal Profile Description.....	61
2.2 Geographic Location	61
2.3 Situational Analysis	61
CHAPTER 3: KPA 1 SPATIAL RATIONAL	72
3.1. SPATIAL RATIONALE.....	72
3.2 Land Use management Scheme, 2023 (LUMS)	76
3.3 Geographical Information System (GIS)	77
3.4 Housing development	78
3.5 Environmental Situational Analysis.....	80
3.6. Spatial Environmental Management.....	88
3.7. Waste Management	124
3.8. SWOT analysis in spatial planning.....	126
CHAPTER 4: KPA 2 BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY	128
4.1 Water services.....	128
4.2 Sanitation services.....	133
4.3 Energy and Electricity Analysis.....	138
4.4 Waste Management	140

4.5 Indigents.....	145
4.6 Municipal Roads and Storm Water Infrastructure	146
4.7 SOCIAL ANALYSIS.....	155
4.8. Safety and Security	171
4.9. Education Analysis	177
4.10. Social grants in the Municipality.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
4.11. Sports, Arts and Culture	185
4.12. Telecommunication Services.....	188
CHAPTER 5: KPA 3 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	190
5.1. Introduction	190
5.2. LED Forum	190
5.3. Other Economic Opportunities.....	192
CHAPTER 6: KPA 4 FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT	201
6.1. Legislative Prescripts on Municipal Financial Management.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
6.2. mSCOA is Multi-Dimensional in Nature	Error! Bookmark not defined.
6.3. Background.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
CHAPTER 7: KPA 5 GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION.....	204
7.1. Organisational Performance Management System.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.2. O-PMS Challenges.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.3. Functionality of Municipal Council Committee.....	204
7.4. Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC)	207
7.5. Intergovernmental Relations (IGR)	Error! Bookmark not defined.
7.6. Processes of Communication	209
7.7. Risk Management Unit.....	210
7.8. Public Participation	Error! Bookmark not defined.
CHAPTER 8: KPA 6 MUNICIPAL INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION	223
8.1. Introduction	223
8.2. Vacancy Rate	224
8.3. Mayoral Desk (Gender, Disability and Youth)	225
8.4. Human Resource Management.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
8.5. Information and Communication Technology.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
8.6. Legal Services.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
8.7. Employment Equity.....	229

8.8. Traditional Authorities	231
8.9. Political MANAGEMENT TEAM	231
CHAPTER 9: RISK AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT	237
9.1. Disaster and Risk Management Background	237
9.2. Disaster Profile.....	237
9.3. Risk Management Unit.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
9.4. Risk Management Committee.....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
9.5. MUNICIPAL SWOT Analysis	Error! Bookmark not defined.
CHAPTER 10: STRATEGIES PHASE	244
CHAPTER 11: PROJECT PHASE.....	280
CHAPTER 12: INTEGRATION PHASE	286
MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S QUALITY CERTIFICATE	296

NOT TO BE USED AS IS NOT ALIGNRD TO CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES	PAGE NO
CHAPTER 1: PLANNING FRAMEWORK	17
Table 1.1: Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives	18
Table 1.2: Policies/Frameworks	20
Table 1.3: SONA	29
Table 1.4: SOPA	31
Table 1.5: Municipal Powers and Functions	35
Table 1.6: Municipal Priority Issues	36
Table 1.7: Roles and Responsibilities	38
Table 1.8: IDP MEC's Assessment	40
Table 1.9: Summary of Phases and Activities of the IDP Process	41
Table 1.10: Binding Requirements	44
Table 1.11: Mscoa Budget and Risk Management Activities	46
Table 1.12: Summary of Process Plan IDP, Budget and O-PMS Meetings for 2024/2025	47
CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL PROFILE	50
Table 2.1: Race Profile	52
Table 2.2: Age Distribution	53
Table 2.3: Gender Distribution	54
Table 2.4: Educational Level	54
Table 2.5: People with Disability (Male)	55
Table 2.6: People with Disability (Female)	55
Table 2.7: Gross Domestic Product	56
Table 2.8: Employment Composition	57
Table 2.9: Total Employment for economic Sector	57
Table 2.10: Unemployment Rate	58
CHAPTER 3: KPA 1 SPATIAL RATIONALE	59
Table 3.1: Modimolle-Mookgophong Growth Development Nodes	61
Table 3.2: Hierachy of Settlements	61

Table 3.3: Hierachy of Settlements and Grouwth Points Area	61
Table 3.4: Land use Challenges and Opportunities	63
Table 3.5: Low Cost Housing	64
Table 3.6: Residential Proposed	64
Table 3.7: Household Backlog	65
Table 3.8: Informal Settlement	65
Table 3.9: Climate Risks	79
Table 3.10: Number of Personel	89
Table 3.11: Environmental Planning Tools	91
Table 3.12: Licenced Municipal Landfill site	92
Table 3.13: Swot Spatial Rational	94
CHAPTER 4: KPA 2 BASIC SERVICES	95
Table 4.1: Number of Municipal Boreholes	96
Table 4.2: Groundwater Available	97
Table 4.3: Blue Drop	97
Table 4.4: Municipal Water Balance	98
Table 4.5: Water Demand vs Supply	98
Table 4.6: Sanitation and Treatment Plant	99
Table 4.7: Green Drop Compliance	101
Table 4.8: Green Drop Audit	102
Table 4.9: Energy Supply Plot Services	103
Table 4.10: Licenced Municipal Landfill sites	105
Table 4.11: Free Basic Services	107
Table 4.12: Houshold with Basic Services and Backlog	107
Table 4.13: Municipal Roads Condition	109
Table 4.14: Road Classification	109
Table 4.15: Tarred Road Infrastructure	110
Table 4.16: Gravel Road Infrastructure	110
Table 4.17: Employee Roads and Stormwater Services	113

Table 4.18: Financial Performance Roads and aStormwater	114
Table 4.19: Transport and Community Safety	115
Table 4.20: Housing Backlog	117
Table 4.21: Health Facilities	117
Table 4.22: Top Ten Burden of Diseases	118
Table 4.23: Prevalence of Diseases	118
Table 4.24: Prevalence of Non-Communicable Diseases	120
Table 4.25: Challenges and Interventions of Emergency Medical Services	120
Table 4.26: Social Development Facilities in the Municipality (ECD)	121
Table 4.27: Social Development Facilities in the Municipality and Social Relief Beneficiaries	122
Table 4.28: Community Outreach	126
Table 4.29: ECD Enrolled	127
Table 4.30: ECD Educators and Facolities	127
Table 4.31: Ownership of ECD Facilities	128
Table 4.32: Safety and Security	129
Table 4.33: Crime Stats	129
Table 4.34: Centres of Dept of Correctional Services	130
Table 4.35: Modimolle Centre of Excellence	130
Table 4.36: Parole Conditions	130
Table 4.37: Rehabilitation Programmes	132
Table 4.38: Challenges and Solution	133
Table 4.39: Summarised Category of Schools	133
Table 4.40: Categories of Schools	134
Table 4.41: Backlog of Classroom	135
Table 4.42: Backlog of Schools	135
Table 4.43: State Provision of Scholar Transport (e.g. bicycles, buses and taxis) and school nutrition	135
Table 4.44: Matric Results	136
Table 4.45: Categories of Social Grants	138
Table 4.46: Requirements of Different Grants	138

Table 4.47: Municipal Recreational Facilities	139
Table 4.48: Allocation of Recreational Facilities	139
Table 4.49: Backlogs Recreational Facilities	140
Table 4.50: Number of Libraries	140
Table 4.51: Backlogs of Libraries	140
Table 4.52: Cemeteries	141
Table 4.53: Network and Post Office Services	141
CHAPTER 5: KPA 3 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	143
Table 5.1: Economic profile	144
Table 5.2: Key Economic Drivers	144
Table 5.3: Tourism Sector and Challenges	147
Table 5.4: Institutions Supporting SMME's	148
Table 5.5: State of Local Skills Base	149
Table 5.6: LED Existing Projects	149
Table 5.7: EPWP Job Created	150
CHAPTER 6: KPA 4 MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY	152
Table 6.1: Grant Allocation	154
CHAPTER 7: KPA 5 GOOD GOVERNMENT AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION	155
Table 7.1: Portfolio Committees	156
Table 7.2: Section 79 Committees Chairperson and Members	157
Table 7.3: Executive Roles and Ethics Committees	158
Table 7.4: Auditor Risk and Mpac Committees	158
Table 7.5: Auditor General Report	159
Table 7.6: Special programmes Challenges and Interventions	161
Table 7.7: Municipal Top Nine Risks	163
Table 7.8: Cross Cutting Needs	164
Table 7.9: Municipal Needs per Wards	165
CHAPTER 8: KPA 6 MUNICIPAL INSTITUTION AND TRANSFORMATION	174
Table 8.1: Institutional Overview	175

Table 8.2: Management of the Municipality	176
Table 8.3 :Age Statistics	176
Table 8.4: Staff Compliments	177
Table 8.5: Occupational Health and Safety	179
Table 8.6: Employment Equity	182
Table 8.7: List of Councillors	183
Table 8.8: Seat Allocation for Political Parties	184
CHAPTER 9: CROSS CUTTING ANALYSIS	189
Table 9.1: Top Nine Risks	192
Table 9.2: Institutional Swot	193
CHAPTER 10: STRATEGY PHASE	197
Table 10.1: Strategic Objectives of the Municipality	197
Table 10.2: Developmental Strategies and Alignment	198
Table 10.3: Programme/Projects, Objectives and Strategies per KPA	199
Table 10.4: Risk Mitigation	213
Table 10.5: MMLM Measuring Outcome	215
Table 10.6: Resolutions	222
CHAPTER 11: PROJECTS PHASE	225
Table 11.1 to 11.5: Capital Investment Projects For 2025/26 to 2027/28	229-233
CHAPTER 12: INTEGRATION PHASE	230
Table 12.1: Magalies	230
Table 12.2: Sanral	231
Table 12.3: Coghsta	232
Table 12.4: Dept of Education	234
Table 12.5: Health and Social Development	235
Table 12.6 Social Development	235
Table 12.7: Public Works (Roads)	236
Table 12.8: Public Works (Buildings)	237
Table 12.9: National Dept of Public Works	237
Table 12.10. DFFE	238
Table 12.11: Status of Sector Plans	242
Table 12.12: SDBIP	244
Municipal manager Quality Certificate	259

LIST OF ACRONYMS

Acronyms/abbreviations	Description
ABET	Adult Basic Education and Training
AC	Audit Committee
CBO	Community Based Organization
CIP	Comprehensive Investment Plan
CDG	Care Dependency Grant
CDW	Community Development Workers
CSG	Child Support Grant
CoGHSTA	Department of Cooperative Governance Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
CPI	Consumer Price Index
DBSA	Development bank of Southern Africa
DDM	District Development Model
DG	Disability Grant
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
EEDM	Energy Efficiency and Demand side Management
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESP	External Service Provider
FCG	Foster Care Grant
FY	Financial Year
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
GIS	Geographic Information System
GRAP	Generally Recognised Accounting Practice
GVA	Gross value added
HAST	HIV AIDS, Sexually Transmitted Diseases and Tuberculosis
HH	Household
HIV	Human Immunodeficiency virus
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
INEP	Integrated National Electrification Programme
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
IWMP	Integrated Waste Management Plan
JIPSA	Joint Initiative on Preferred Skills Acquisition
KPA	Key Performance Area
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LED	Local Economic Development
LEGDP	Limpopo, Employment, Growth and Development Plan
LG SETA	Local Government Skills Education Training Authorities
LGTAS	Local Government Turnaround Strategy
LSDF	Limpopo Spatial Development Framework
LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme
MDG	Millennium Development Goals
MEC	Member of the Executive Committee
MEC	Member of the Executive Council
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act, (Act No.56 of 2003)
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grand
MMLM	Modimolle Mookgophong Local Municipality
MPAC	Municipal Public Accounts Committee
MPAC	Municipal Public Account Committee

Acronyms/abbreviations	Description
MSA	Municipal Systems Act, (Act No. 32 of 2000)
MSCOA	Municipal Standard Chart of Accounts
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTREF	Medium Term Revenue and Expenditure Framework
NDP	National Development Plan
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
PAC	Performance Audit Committee
PFM	Powers Performed by Municipality
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PMS	Performance Management System
PMS	Performance Management System
PPP	Public Private Partnership
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SIP	Strategic Infrastructure Project
SMME	Small, Medium and Macro Enterprises
SONA	State of the Nation Address
SOPA	State of the Provincial Address
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act No. 16 of 2013)
OAG	Old Age Grant
TOR	Terms of Reference
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
WDM	Waterberg District Municipality
WSDP	Water Services Development Plan
WSDP	Work Skills Development Plan
WSIG	Water Service Infrastructure Grant
WSP	Water Services Provider
WSP	Workplace Skills Plan

VISSION AND MISSION

VISION

“Limpopo’s leading local municipality in reliable service delivery and sustainable economic growth”

MISSION

To strive for excellence in the:

- Promotion of accountable, transparent and people-centred governance;
- Promotion of social and economic development;
- Provision of sustainable and affordable basic services
- Promotion of a sustainable environment for economic growth;
- Promotion of sound customer care relations.

CORE VALUES

VALUES	DESCRIPTION
Accountability	The obligation to take responsibility for one’s actions.
Collaboration	The need to promote teamwork and involvement of other stakeholders including the community.
Innovation	Living this value means that MMLM representatives should translate ideas or invention into a goods or services that creates value for the municipality and the community it serves.
Integrity	Living this value means that MMLM representatives will display behaviour, attitudes and actions informed by honesty, commitment to the municipality, its policies, procedures and processes.
Responsiveness	The quality of responding quickly and positively.
Transparency	The obligation to act in an open and transparent manner.
Value for money	Ensuring that the community derives value out of the services provided by the municipality and that the municipality has obtained the maximum benefit from the goods and services it acquires, within the limited resources.

THE MAYOR'S FOREWORD



Cllr MA MBOWENI
MAYOR

It is with great pride and a deep sense of responsibility that I present to you the fifth Intergrated Development Plan (IDP) of the municipality. The document is set to guide our initiatives for the 2025/2026 period marks an important moment in our journey towards sustainable development. As members of this council, we are acutely aware of the many challenges that our community faces.

Unemployment, economic disparities, service delivery issues, and pressing social concerns, just to mention few among many. However, with challenges come opportunities, and we are committed to transforming these opportunities into tangible actions that will benefit all residents. For example, we are planning to hold the first employment summit in the history of this municipality before the end of the calendar year.

The IDP is not merely a document. It is a roadmap that reflects our collective vision for a prosperous future. It has been developed through extensive consultation with community members, stakeholders, and experts across various fields. The inputs of our community have been indispensable in shaping the priorities and strategies laid out in this plan. Transperancy, accountability, and inclusivity are the cornerstones of our governance. We are dedicated to working with our community to implement the initiatives outlined in this IDP document. The voices of our community members matter, and we encourage open dialogue and collaboration in the pursuit of our goals.

In the 2025/2026 period, we will focus on critical areas such as sustainable economic development, improved infrastructure, supply of basic services, and service delivery in general. Our aim is to build a resilient community ...that not only meets the needs of today but also to be able to face the challenges of tomorrow.

Cllr M.A. MBOWENI
MAYOR

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY BY THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER



**LC MALEMA
ACTING MUNICIPAL MANAGER**

As we gather to present the Intergrated Development Plan (IDP) for the year 2025/2026, It is important to reflect on the significant path our municipality has undergone.

This document is a crucial blueprint for sustainable growth and development. It reflects our community 's priorities and outlines strategic initiatives designed to address pressing challenges while maximizing opportunities.

Despite all challenges during the year under review, our municipality achieved an unqualified audit opinion. I want to thank the council and the management team for implementing the Audit Action Plan as advised by the Auditor General South Africa, and we may work towards a better audit outcome, which is attainable. In crafting this IDP, we have engaged deeply with community members and stakeholders, ensuring that their insights and perspectives are woven into the fabric of our planning process. Our focus remains steadfast on fostering inclusive development that uplifts all citizens.

We are particularly committed to enhancing social equity.

In closing, let us embrace this opportunity for renewal and progress with determination and optimism. The journey ahead may be challenging, but with shared purpose and commitment, we will continue to build a prosperous and vibrant community for all.

**LC MALEMA
ACTING MUNICIPAL MANAGER**

CHAPTER 1: THE PLANNING PROCESS

1.1 INTRODUCTION

The Integrated Development Plan is a process through which municipalities prepare a strategic development plan for a period of five years which is reviewed annually. The IDP is the principal strategic planning instrument which guides and informs all planning, budgeting, management and decision – making processes in a municipality.

Chapter 5 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32, 2000 dictates that a municipality develops a single, inclusive and strategic plan for development of the municipality aligned to the development initiatives of surrounding municipalities and other government/sector departments. The Act requires the municipality to formulate an IDP inclusive of the following components:

- A long term vision of the municipality focused on the most critical development and internal transformation needs;
- An assessment of the existing levels of development in the municipality which must include the identification of the need for basic municipal services;
- The municipal development priorities and objectives for its elected term;
- The municipal development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sector plans and planning requirements;
- A spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system;
- The municipal operational strategies;
- A disaster management plan;
- Financial plan, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years and
- Key performance indicators and performance targets.

The Municipal Planning and Performance Regulations (2001) set the following requirements for the IDP

- An institutional framework for implementation of the IDP and to address the municipal internal transformation;
- Investment initiatives should be clarified, development initiatives infrastructure, physical, social and institutional development and
- All known projects, plans and programmes to be implemented within the municipality by any organ of state

The Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act 53, 2003 places a premium on the alignment/integration of the IDP with the Annual Budget. This alignment is important especially in the case of ensuring that the IDP and Budget are integrated. The SDBIP also needs to be developed and approved by the Mayor for the implementation of service delivery and the Annual Budget. The SDBIP (Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan) consists of monthly revenue and expenditure projections, quarterly service delivery targets and performance indicators.

1.2. LEGISLATIVE BACKGROUND AND POLICY IMPERATIVES

The Modimolle-Mookgopong Local Municipality is governed by legislation and policies proclaimed in the Republic of South Africa. These acts, along with the Constitution, outline the establishment, structure, and functioning of municipalities, including their powers, responsibilities, and financial management. Municipalities also have the authority to create their own by-laws for specific subject areas. Table 1.1 and 1.2 below shows a list of acts, policies and regulations governing Municipalities.

Table 1.1: Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives

Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives	
Acts	Description/Focus
The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act No. 108 of 1996)	<p>The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996) section 152 sub section (1) mandate municipalities within their financial and administrative capacity to achieve the objectives and carry out the developmental duties assigned to Local Government to ;</p> <p>(a) Provide democratic and accountable government for all communities. (b) Ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner. (c) Promote Social and economic development (d) Promote a safe and healthy environment; and (e) Encourage the involvement of communities and community organisation in the matter of local government</p> <p>A municipality must strive, within its financial and administrative capacity, to achieve the objects as set out in subsection (1)</p> <p>Section 153 Developmental duties of municipalities- A municipality must (a)structure and manage its administration and budgeting and planning process to give priority to the basic needs of the community, and to promote the social and economic development of the community (b) Participate in national and provincial development programme.</p>
Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013	<p>Prescribe land development procedures based on the principles of integrated planning, optimal use of existing resources and the promotion of sustainable development.</p> <p>Sections of the Act states that development initiatives are necessary for promoting integration in respect of social, economic institutional and physical aspects of development; promoting integrated development in rural and urban areas; promoting development of localities that are nearer to residential and employment opportunities; optimizing the use of existing resources; discouraging urban sprawl; and contributing to more compact cities and towns.</p>
Batho Pele White Paper of 1997	<p>Make provision for eight Batho- Pele principles which should guide conduct of public service in providing services to the communities. In giving effect to the notion of treating the recipients of government services as customers,</p>

Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives

Acts	Description/Focus
	<p>the White Paper articulates that public sector, including the local government sphere, should be governed by the following ethos (principles):</p> <p>Consultation: Citizens should be consulted about the level and quality of the services they receive and wherever possible, should be given a choice about the services that are offered;</p> <p>Service Standards: Citizens should be told what level and quality of services they would receive so that they are aware of what to expect;</p> <p>Access: All citizens should have equal access to the services to which they are entitled;</p> <p>Courtesy: Citizens should be treated with courtesy and consideration;</p> <p>Information Citizens should be given full, accurate information about the public services that are entitled to receive;</p> <p>Openness and transparency: Citizens should be told how the national and provincial departments are run, how much they cost, who is in charge;</p> <p>Redress: If the promised standard of service is not delivered, citizens should be offered an apology, a full explanation and a speedy and effective remedy, and when complaints are made, citizens should receive a sympathetic, positive response;</p> <p>Value for money: Public services should be provided economically and efficiently in order to give citizens the best possible value for money.</p>
White Paper on Local Government of 1998	<p>White paper on local government paper provides policy clarity the kind of local government needed to democratize and facilitate delivery of services to all communities. It describe the developmental responsibility of local government</p> <p>It further prescribe the basis for a new developmental local government and classify it as a system, which is committed to working with citizens, groups and communities to create sustainable human settlements which provide for a decent quality of life and meet all the needs of communities in a holistic way. The white paper further promotes three important developmental approaches:</p> <p>Integrated development planning and budgeting;</p> <p>Performance management; and</p> <p>Participatory approach, working together with communities and partners.</p>
Municipal Systems Act no 32 of 2000	<p>This is the key legislation that guides the processes in developing and reviewing the IDP/Budget. The Act mandates the municipality by the following:</p> <p>Chapter 4: 16. (1) A municipality must develop a culture of municipal governance that: complements formal representative government with a system of participatory Governance, and must for this purpose-</p> <p>(a) Encourage, and create conditions for, the local community to participate in the</p> <p>Affairs of the municipality, including in—</p> <p>(i) The Preparation. Implementation and review of its integrated development</p>

Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives

Acts	Description/Focus
	<p>Plan.</p> <p>Chapter 5: Each municipal council shall, upon election, adopt a single inclusive and strategic plan which: links, integrates and co-ordinates municipal implementation plans; Aligns the available resources and capacity with the implementation plan.</p> <p>Chapter 6: Each Municipal council must-</p> <p>(a) manage the development of the municipality's performance management system:</p> <p>(1) A municipality must in terms of its performance management system and in 5 accordance with any regulations and guidelines that may be prescribed— ([z] set appropriate key performance indicators as a yardstick for measuring Performance, including outcomes and impact. with regard to the municipality's development priorities and objectives set out in its integrated development plan; (b) set measurable performance targets with regard to each of those development priorities and objectives; (c) with regard to each of those development priorities and objectives and against the key performance indicators and targets set in terms of paragraphs (a) and (b) - 15 (i) monitor performance; and (ii) measure and review performance at least once per year; (d) take steps to improve performance with regard to those development priorities and objectives where performance targets are not met (b) assign responsibilities in this regard to the municipal manager, and (c) submit the proposed system to the municipal council for adoption</p> <p>Section28: Each municipal council shall adopt an IDP Process Plan to guide all phases of the IDP processes</p> <p>Section 34: Each municipal council shall review its IDP annually, taking into consideration the following aspects: An assessment of its performance measurements To the extent that changing circumstances so demand May amend its IDP according to a prescribed process if deem necessary</p>
<p>The Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998)</p>	<p>The said Act provides for the following: Chapter 5: Stipulates the general functions and powers of municipalities Section83(1): Each municipality has powers and functions assigned to it in terms of the provisions of the Constitution,Section83(2): Powers and functions must be divided between the District Municipality and the Local Municipalities</p>

Legislative Background and Policy Imperatives

Acts	Description/Focus
Municipal Finance Management Act no 56 of 2003	<p>To secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of the municipalities and other institutions in local government. It provides clarity on municipal budgetary process and how these budgets must be utilized</p> <p>This act addresses three critical aspects in the IDP implementation plan, namely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transformation of the procurement approach; Alignment of the IDP, budgeting and performance management processes; Linkage of IDP time frames with budget time frames.
Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act no 13 of 2005	<p>This provides clarity on how all the three spheres of government must work together. The Act is a response to the limited successes in the alignment efforts among the three spheres of government. It creates a framework to support intergovernmental cooperation and coordination as required by the Constitution in its definition of “cooperative governance”. It provides for the obligation of all spheres to participate in the planning processes of the municipality and in turn allow their own planning processes to be influenced by the municipal IDP’s. The Act establishes structures and processes that enhance inter – governmental planning and monitoring processes for local, provincial and national spheres of governance.</p>
National Environmental Management Act no 107 of 1998	<p>Provide guidance on issues of environmental management and how Municipalities can integrate issues of environment into development. It identifies economic, social and environmental issues as pillars of sustainable development. make provision environmental impact assessment as an instrument that can used to assess the negative and positive impacts of proposed projects ad recommend to mitigate potential negative impacts and enhance the positive impacts</p>
Local Government: Planning and Performance Regulations, 2001	<p>Set out the following further requirements for the IDP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An Institutional Framework for implementation of the IDP and to address the Municipality’s internal transformation. Investment initiatives that should be clarified. Development initiatives including infrastructure, physical, social and institutional development. All known projects, plans and programmes to be implemented within the Municipality by any organ of state.

Table 1.2: Policies and Legislative Frameworks

Policies/Frameworks	
Policies	Description/Focus
Local Agenda 21	This advocates for governments including municipalities to engage in sustainable development. Development so that future generations can still be able to survive. Local authorities must work in partnership with their communities
Millennium Development Goals	Identifies eight millennium development goals that all nations must achieve by 2015.it advocates amongst others halving poverty, universal primary education, global partnership for development, improved environmental sustainability, reducing child mortality, reducing maternal mortality, eliminating gender disparity and halting the spread of HIV/Aids
National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP)	The National Spatial Development Perspective is the primary spatial lens through which policy makers view socio-economic development in the country as a whole. It presents wide variety of socio economic trends emerging in South Africa, and then draws inferences about how that emerging space economy should affect public investment (expenditure) in the immediate future
Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF)	<p>The 2025-2029 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for South Africa is built on the National Development Plan, the Statement of Intent of the Government of National Unity, and the consensus reached during the Cabinet Lekgotla. This framework outlines key priorities for the 7th administration, aiming to create a more inclusive country. The MTSF also incorporates the three strategic priorities outlined by President Cyril Ramaphosa in his Opening of Parliament Address on July 18, 2024. The MTSF 2025–2029 translates the NDP goals and priorities over a five-year period. These apex priorities, which will be achieved through the joint efforts of all government institutions, are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inclusive Economic Growth: Ensuring economic growth benefits all South Africans, reducing unemployment, poverty, and inequality. • Capable, Developmental, and Ethical State: Strengthening the state's capacity to deliver services, promoting ethical governance, and driving development. • Reducing Unemployment, Poverty, and the Rising Cost of Living: Implementing initiatives to address these challenges and improve the quality of life for all South Africans.
Government National Unity Priorities	<p>The Programme of Action (PoA) is an annual statement of government's priorities for the year. It outlines government's major plans for the year ahead. The PoA has identified 10 priority areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speed up economic growth and transform the economy to create decent work and sustainable livelihoods;

Policies/Frameworks	
Policies	Description/Focus
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduce a massive programme to build economic and social infrastructure; • Develop and implement a comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform and food security; • Strengthen the skills and human resource base; • Improve the health profile of all South Africans; • Intensify the fight against crime and corruption; • Build cohesive, caring, and sustainable communities; • Pursue African advancement and enhanced international cooperation; • Ensure sustainable resource management and use; and • Build a developmental state, improve public services, and strengthen democratic institutions.
Reviewed Limpopo Development Plan (LDP)	<p>The province has developed the Limpopo Development Plan for 2020-2025 to guide integrated planning, resource allocation and service delivery for the 6th term of administration. The LDP Development Strategy is expressed in terms of the following eight (8) priorities, as aligned with the MTSF priorities in order to contribute to the achievement of the broader NDP Vision 2030:</p> <p>Eight (8) Priorities of the LDP 2020-2025</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transform the public service for effective and efficient service delivery. • Transformation and modernization of the provincial economy • Provision of quality education and a quality healthcare system • Integrated and sustainable socio-economic infrastructure development • Accelerate social change and improve quality of life of Limpopo's citizens. • Spatial transformation for integrated socio-economic development • Strengthen crime prevention and social cohesion. • Economic transformation and job creation through regional integration.

Policies/Frameworks	
Policies	Description/Focus
Government Plan of Action	<p>The Programme of Action (PoA) is an annual statement of government's priorities for the year. It outlines government's major plans for the year ahead. The PoA has identified 10 priority areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speed up economic growth and transform the economy to create decent work and sustainable livelihoods; • Introduce a massive programme to build economic and social infrastructure; • Develop and implement a comprehensive rural development strategy linked to land and agrarian reform and food security; • Strengthen the skills and human resource base; • Improve the health profile of all South Africans; • Intensify the fight against crime and corruption; • Build cohesive, caring, and sustainable communities; • Pursue African advancement and enhanced international cooperation; • Ensure sustainable resource management and use; and • Build a developmental state, improve public services, and strengthen democratic institutions.
New Growth path	<p>The framework guide the government to create decent jobs, reducing inequality and defeating poverty and calls for;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A more inclusive and greener economy • Government to prioritise its efforts and resources to support employment creation and equity • Business to take challenge of investing in new areas • A vision to achieve a more developed , democratic and cohesive and equitable society
National Development Plan Priorities	<p>NDP Priorities Education Health Rural development and food security The fight against crime and corruption</p>
Twelve National Outcomes	<p>In pursuit of the above state five key priorities twelve national outcomes were developed to guide the programmes of department, parastatals, municipalities and civil society in general.</p> <p>Improve the quality of basic education Improve health and life expectancy All people in South Africa protected and feel safe Decent employment through inclusive economic growth A skilled and capable workforce to support inclusive growth An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life</p>

Policies/Frameworks	
Policies	Description/Focus
	<p>A response and accountable, effective and efficient local government system</p> <p>Protection and enhancement of environmental assets and natural resources</p> <p>A better South Africa, a better and safer Africa and the world</p> <p>An efficient, effective and development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship</p>
Back to Basics	<p>The Presidential Local Government Summit held in September 2014 on the State of municipalities across the country, that Cabinet approved the framework for the development and subsequent implementation of the Back to Basics Approach in all provinces and by all municipalities. The Back to Basics Approach should provide municipalities with the opportunity to set strategic programmes of action to remedy the challenges and shortcoming expressed in September 2014 State of Municipality Report.</p> <p>The declaration endorsed at the Presidential Local Government Summit commits the country towards the mobilization of all stakeholders and all municipalities to differentiate municipal specific interventions on and support aimed at achieving the following strategic objectives:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Putting people first; Delivering basic services; Good governance; Sound financial management; Building capacity. <p>In order to strengthen local government coordination, municipalities are required to report on monthly basis on the implementation of Back to Basics Approach.</p>

OUTCOME 9

The transformative role of local government is set out in Outcome 9 of the NDP. It highlights that municipalities should deliver services in a responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient manner to enhance the livelihoods of communities.

This will contribute to:

- Improved quality of basic education;
- A long and healthy life for all South Africans;
- All people in South Africa are, and feel, free;
- Decent employment through inclusive economic growth;
- A skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path;
- An efficient, competitive, and responsive economic infrastructure network;
- Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all;
- Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life;
- A responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient local government system
 - Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support;
 - Output 2: Improve access to basic services;
 - Output 3: Implementation of Community Works Programme;
 - Output 4: Action supportive of sustainable human settlement outcomes;
 - Output 5: Deepening democracy through refined ward committee system;
 - Output 6: Administrative and financial capability;
 - Output 7: Single window of coordination.
- Environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced
- Create a better South Africa and contribute to better and safer Africa and World
- An efficient, effective, and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair, and inclusive citizenship.

1.3. DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL WATERBERG DISTRICT ONE PLAN

1.3.1. BACKGROUND

On the 26 November 2019, the President launched the District Development Model (DDM) in Lephalale, Waterberg. This was followed by the launch of the DDM Hub and its associated expertise and services by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA), Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma on the 5th September 2020. The outcome of the first step in the DDM institutionalization.

Government is using the DDM as a practical method to improve cooperative governance and promote integrated planning, budgeting and implementation on the basis of stakeholder and community involvement, and thereby build a capable and ethical Developmental State with strong local government that can respond to current and future needs and effectively implement national priorities.

The objective of the DDM will be achieved through the One Plan. According to the DDM content guide, the One Plan serves as a strategic framework: The One Plan is a Strategic Long-Range Framework including short, medium and long-term objectives/interventions to guide all state and private investment within the district and metropolitan areas. It is not a detailed or comprehensive plan covering the full range of departmental and municipal responsibilities.

This One Plan as a key instrument of the DDM, it is championed at the highest level by the President and is facilitated by the Minister for Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs. The Waterberg One Plan is based on the DDM Theory of Change which postulates six transformation areas (1. Demographic change and people development, 2. Economic Positioning, 3. Spatial Restructuring and Environmental Sustainability, 4. Infrastructure Engineering, 5. Integrated Services Provisioning, and 6. Governance and Management) to move from the current state of underdevelopment to a desired better future. The Waterberg One Plan aims to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy.

This will result in the Waterberg being a desired investment destination that leverage from its locational advantage with respect to the Gauteng global city region and various international border posts, its global resource competitiveness relating to mineral resources and the unique world heritage site and finally the social potential rooted within the district.

To achieve the aspiration of a well-managed district, respective role players will aim to stabilize governance framework and policies and improve intergovernmental communication and collaboration through the hub in order to focus on appropriate

service delivery, focusing on existing asset maintenance and the provision of bulk basic services such as renewable energy and water supply.

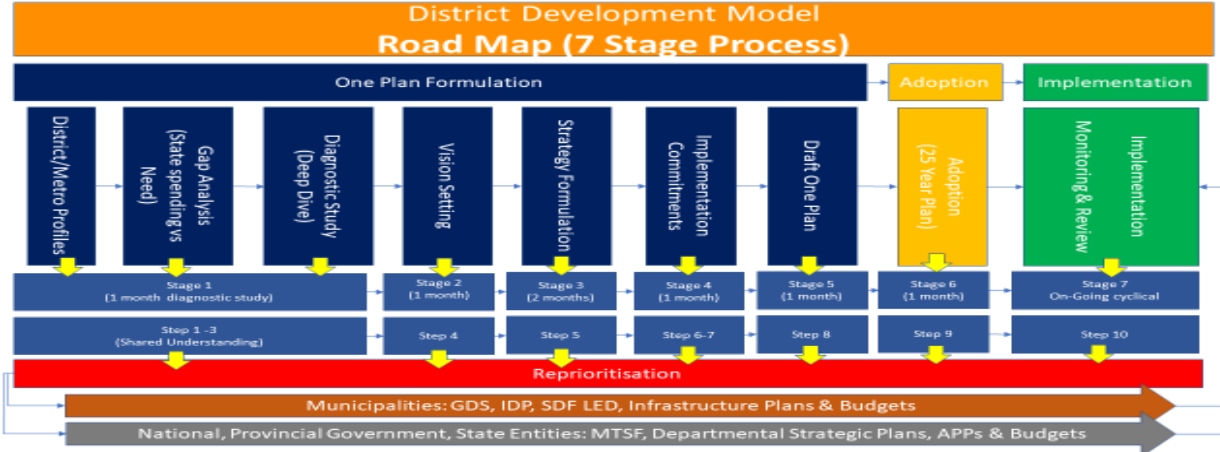
1.3.2. THE PURPOSE OF WATERBERG DDM

The purpose of this Waterberg DDM is outlined as follows:

- i. To give effect to the District Development Model approved by cabinet as a practical method to improve service delivery and development impact in the Waterberg space through integrated planning, collaborative budgeting and focused delivery by all three spheres of government working together with stakeholders and communities;
- ii. To achieve the objectives of the National Development Plan (“NDP”), the National Spatial Development Framework (“NSDF”), the Integrated Urban Development Framework (“IUDF”) and other key national provincial and local socio-economic and spatial development policies;
- iii. To jointly and coherently as all government and stakeholders develop a common vision and approach in addressing the current and future development needs and challenges and key priorities of the Waterberg district space;
- iv. To restructure the Waterberg economy from a focus on primary activities such as mining and agriculture to secondary and tertiary activities which include manufacturing and downstream beneficiation opportunities;
- v. To create an environment which is conducive for investment;
- vi. To stabilize governance and financial management practices in the Waterberg district;
- vii. To capacitate people, in particular the vulnerable groups such as women, youth and the disabled through skills redevelopment and development to meaningfully participate in the economy; and
- viii. To focus on infrastructure planning, maintenance and expansion.

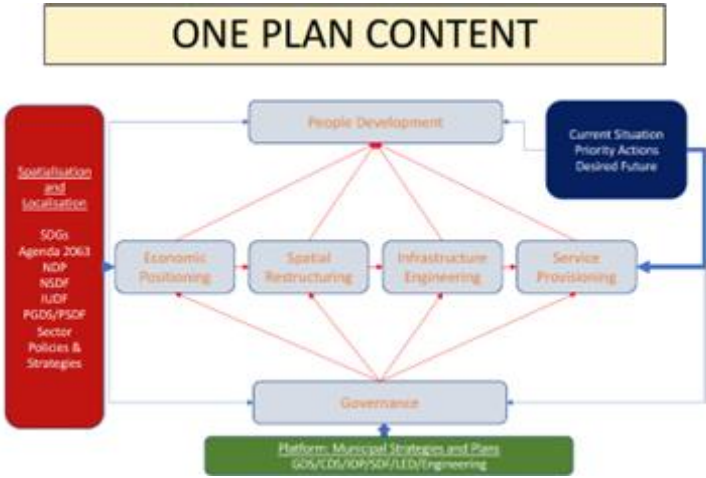
The Waterberg One Plan provides multiple spheres of government, stakeholders, communities, and investors with a strategic direction unique to the district in moving from the current situation to the desired future to which to aspire to. The strategic direction is represented by a set of key strategies and an action plan to start moving towards the realization of the desired future state. In fact, it is a product of a multi-sphere government approach with stakeholders and communities as strategic partners to change the fortunes of the people of Waterberg. Only through collaboration, internalization and a whole-of-society embedding of what needs to be done to tap into the potential of Waterberg – and respond to that – will the One Plan be successful.

The One Plan formulation process followed the seven DDM stages roadmap as depicted in the following diagram.



The One Plan content, catered on the Waterberg Vision 2050, follows the DDM theory of Change and logical framework and is structured in relation to the six DDM Transformation Focal Areas or Goals to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy.

1.3.3. ONE PLAN CONTENT: RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THEMES



Vision

Waterberg - A tourism and energy hub that enables a participative, investment friendly and diversified economy

Vision framework

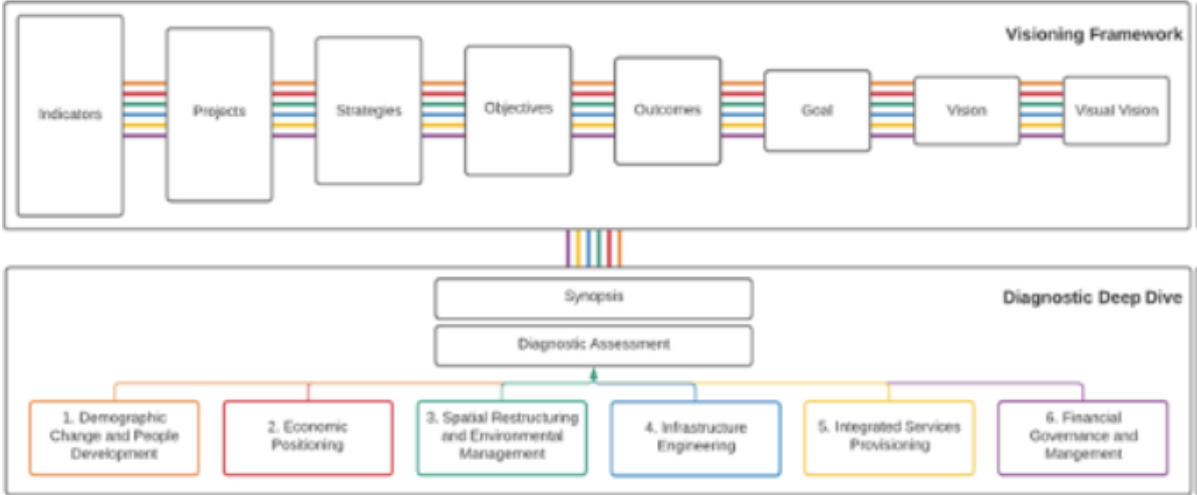
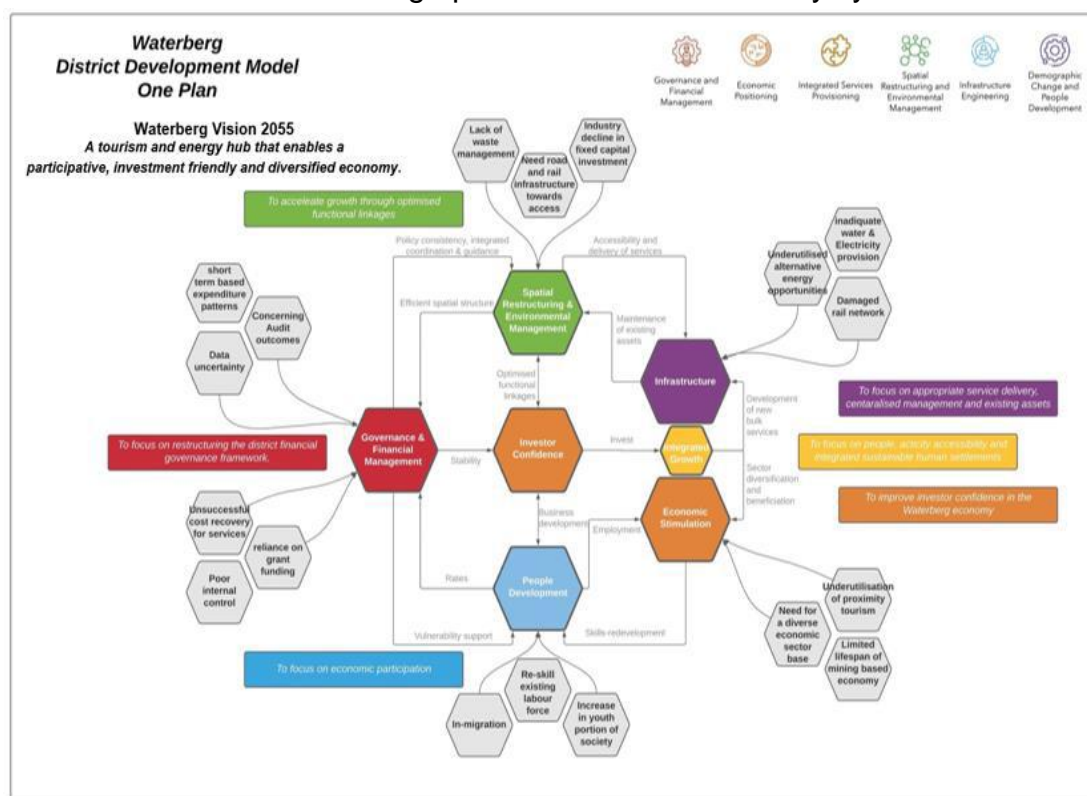


Figure below, highlights the self-reinforcing upliftment and sustainability cycle which indicates the interplay of the 21 strategies and various programmes emanating from the diagnostics. The sequencing is informed by the root causes and vision alignment. There are no one to one strategy and theme relationship. There is a complex interplay of governance, socio, economic, spatial elements that requires a whole system approach rather than a per-theme based approach. The figure shows the inter-relatedness and interdependence relationships of various strategies with the potential to positively reinforce each other.

Self-reinforcing upliftment and sustainability cycle



1.3.4. ONE PLAN STRATEGIES

The strategic goals below provide direction for all of government and the private sector in order to bring about the desired future in the Waterberg district and achieve the set vision. The strategies for each goal are outlined in this section and these strategies of a competitive nature, as well as strategies related to the operations of public sectors active in the district.

One Plan Strategic Goals

DDM Focal Area	Strategic Goal
Demographic change and People Development	To focus on economic participation
Economic Positioning	Improve investor confidence in the Waterberg economy
Spatial Restructuring and Environmental	Accelerate growth through optimised functional linkages between activities
Infrastructure Engineering	Focus on appropriate service delivery, centralised management, and existing asset maintenance.
Integrated Service Provisioning	Focus on people, activity accessibility and integrated sustainable human settlements.
Governance and Financial Management	Focus on restructuring the district financial governance framework.

Table 1.3: Summary of the State of the National Address 2025 (SONA)

	Summary
History	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To drive inclusive growth and job creation. • To reduce poverty and tackle the high cost of living. • To build a capable, ethical and developmental state.
Economy and Infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 5 – number of years for the implementation of the Medium-Term Development Plan. • 3 – government’s strategic priorities to be advanced by the Medium-Term Development Plan. • Over 3% – the level of economic growth that government aims to lift to create the virtuous cycle of investment, growth and jobs. • R100 billion – value of infrastructure financing expected from local and international financial institutions and investors. • More than R940 billion – money that government will spend on infrastructure over the next three years. • 3 – number of years during which government will spend more than R940 billion on infrastructure. • R375 billion – money to be spent by state-owned companies on infrastructure. • 12 – blended finance projects worth nearly R38 billion that have been approved through the Infrastructure Fund last year. • Nearly R38 billion – value of 12 blended finance projects that have been approved through the Infrastructure Fund last year.
Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 490 million – cubic metres of water a year that the Polihlali Dam will feed from the Lesotho Highlands into the Vaal River System. • R23 billion – money secured by the Infrastructure Fund for seven large water infrastructure projects. • 7 – large water infrastructure projects for which the Infrastructure Fund has secured R23 billion.
Energy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More than 300 – days without load-shedding since March 2024. • Over 13 billion – United States dollars that have been pledged by the international community to the Just Energy Transition.
Visa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Over 90% – the backlog of more than 300 000 visa applications that government has cleared. • More than 300 000 – visa applications of over 90% of the backlog that government has cleared.
Business Funding and Job Creation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • R20 billion – value of a transformation fund a year over the next five years that government will set up to fund black-owned and small business enterprises. • Over 10 000 – persons with disabilities to be empowered by the National Skills Fund Disabilities Programme through tailored training programmes, stipends and specialised tools. • Almost 2.2 million – work and livelihood opportunities created by the Presidential Employment Stimulus through innovative models that provide high-quality work to participants. • Over 80 000 – jobs created by the Social Employment Fund in 2025.

Summary	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More than 12 000 – participants supported by the Social Employment Fund to enter entrepreneurial activities
Tourism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Close to 9 million – tourists who visited South Africa last year.
Youth Empowerment and Employment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 235 000 – work opportunities secured by young people during the past year through the National Pathway Management Network, which is underpinned by the SAYouth.mobi platform. • Some 4.5 million – young people registered on the SAYouth.mobi platform. • Around 60% – value of the national budget that government spends on the social wage: on health, education, social protection, community development and public employment programmes.
Social Assistance and Education	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More than 28 million – unemployed and vulnerable people who receive social grants. • More than 10.5 million – learners who go to public schools where they do not have to pay fees. • Over 900 000 – students from poor and working-class backgrounds who received funding to study at universities and colleges in 2024. • 10 – key priorities of the National Strategy to Accelerate Action for Children. • 87% – learners who passed their matric exams. • Approximately 10 000 – students in the first year to be supported through Phase 1 of the Comprehensive Student Funding Model for Higher Education to address the needs of the “missing middle”.
Health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3 – existing old central hospitals to be replaced. • 3 – new central hospitals to be constructed. • 5 – new district hospitals to be constructed. • 5 – community health centres to be constructed. • 1 – a new psychiatric hospital to be constructed. • 96% – people living with HIV who knew their status, by the end of March 2024. • 79% – people on antiretroviral treatment among the 96% of people living with HIV who knew their status, by the end of March 2024. • 94% – people on antiretroviral treatment, among the 96% of people living with HIV who knew their status by the end of March 2024, who were virally suppressed. • 1.1 million – additional HIV-positive people not on antiretroviral treatment that government will look for to ensure that South Africa reaches its target of 95-95-95. • 90 – days during which the United States Government has decided to suspend some of its funding for HIV and TB programmes in African countries. • About 17% – the value of funding from the United States Government to South Africa’s HIV spend.
Housing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 300 000 – serviced stands to be provided to qualifying beneficiaries to enable housing development in well-planned, connected communities along key development corridors.

Summary	
Rail Transport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More than 80% – passenger rail corridors that have been returned to service. • Over 200 – locally-produced trains that the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa has introduced on its network to provide a low-cost option for public transport. • Over the next five years – period during which government will restore the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa’s signalling system.
Crime And Corruption	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 000 – personnel to expand the Detective Service through internal recruitment processes. • Over R95 billion – value of leakage in impermissible refunds that the South African Revenue Service prevented by using artificial intelligence in its fraud risk detection and verification work. • R20 billion – amount recovered by the South African Revenue Service. • Over R10 billion – money recovered by the Special Investigating Unit and Asset Forfeiture Unit in state capture related cases. • 16 out of 22 – action items that government has fully addressed in the law-enforcement system to secure the removal of South Africa from the international Financial Action Task Force grey list.
Gender-Based Violence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 65 – Thuthuzela Care Centres across the country. • 52 – districts in the country. • 44 – districts, out of 55 districts in the country, which have gender-based violence shelters. • 16 – additional sexual offences courts to be established in the next financial year.
Vision	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Next 30 years – period of a vision for the country to be defined by all South Africans coming together in the National Dialogue.

1.4.1. ALIGNMENT OF LIMPOPO DEVELOPMENT PLAN (SOPA, 2025)

During the State of the Province Address (SOPA), held on 26th February 2025 at the Legislature Buildings in Lebowakgomo, the Premier of the Limpopo Province, Dr. P Ramathuba, outlined the State of the Province Address, setting a scene for all the development plans of the Province, including for Provincial Government Department, State-owned-entities, and Municipalities. The address is summarised in the following paragraphs as put on table 1.4 below.

Table 1.4: Summary of the State of the Provincial Address 2026 (SOPA)

Inclusive Growth and Job Creation

Our resolve is driven by the need to see Limpopo's economy growing and creating jobs. It is for this reason that we are still steadfast on developing Special Economic Zones, akin to planting seeds in fertile soil knowing that it will germinate, grow and bear fruits.

Today we take a moment to also reflect on another success story of achievement in our nation, particularly in Limpopo, where we have this remarkable story to share. We invited the founder of SAMPADA Private Equity, a young black entrepreneur to inspire fellow black entrepreneurs, highlighting that with determination, anything is possible. The COVID-19 pandemic served as a pivotal moment, emphasising the need for food security and resilient systems. SAMPADA used the challenge as an opportunity to transition from building malls to sustainable farming, producing strawberries for export to Dubai, Saudi Arabia and Bahrain, all run by a dedicated team of young black women.

It is during this period where Mr Bafedile Mafologele and his business partner embarked on cattle farming venture, starting with just 27 cattle. Today, they manage over 3,000 cattle and have expanded their irrigation from 15 to 300 hectares. SAMPADA is on track to become the largest 100% black-owned red meat producer in Limpopo, creating over 300 jobs. This success story exemplifies what can be achieved through commitment, hard work and resilience without any sense of entitlement.

Our Integrated Emerging Farmers Support Programme has supported 14,939 farmers across various commodities. Ten Smallholder farmers have been identified for commercialisation programme during the 7th Administration. We are committed to assisting smallholder farmers in accessing markets and enhancing their productivity, hence to date, 139 agribusinesses have been assisted with marketing services.

the last time we were here we made a clarion call for establishment of agro-processing plants within the province. It is in this connection that we are pleased to report that a yogurt processing plant shall be established in Polokwane and a beef abattoir shall be constructed in Mookgophong in the foreseeable future.

Part of our work is to support the SMMEs as they play a critical role in job creation. To this effect, we have put in place the Integrated SMME and Cooperatives Development Plan as we made an undertaking in this house previously. We have also established the SMME Support Fund with a ring-fenced budget.

Sadly, we have encountered a serious under-performance over the last 3 years with disbursement of loans to SMMEs. Amongst others, reasons provided are that prospective clients are not meeting set qualification criteria, which is unacceptable. We are directing the MEC for LEDET to work with the agency, LEDA, to review all

its criteria so that LEDA can fulfil one of its mandates.

On the brighter note and as per our commitment, 30% of our Procurement spend has been ring-fenced for the SMMEs and Cooperatives. The target set for SMME spend is 70% as per the LDP and by the end of the third quarter of the current financial year we had achieved 60% spend, inclusive economy means that we must increase our support for small enterprises, entrepreneurs and cooperatives with focus mainly on women, especially rural women, in our case, youth and people with disabilities.

We are therefore directing the Economic Cluster to devise implementing mechanisms that will improve the participation of all the designated groups in the economic activities of our province. In any case this is in line with our manifesto as the governing party, the African National Congress. We dare not fail! you will be pleased to know that for the period April 2024 to January 2025, as a province, we have achieved a 30-day invoice payment compliance rate of 99.78%, placing us among the top two provinces in the country. This, we believe, has a greater impact on how we continue to support business and grow the economy of the province.

Six months ago, we made commitment to continue with the work of revitalising the industrial parks through maximum utilisation of our entities. We are well on course to make sure that this is achieved. Honourable Speaker, in finalising the LDP 2025-2030 we acknowledge that infrastructure planning and programme management, with specific focus on water, roads, energy and sanitation are vital for supporting economic development and job creation.

We acknowledge that water access in Limpopo has regressed to 64.2%, leaving 35.8% of our people without this necessity. The growing population is adding onto the burden of ailing water infrastructure across municipalities. In our 2024 address we committed to ensure that a functional Provincial Water Task Team to coordinate implementation of Provincial Water Intervention Strategy will be established.

The Provincial Water Task Team with its Technical Working Group, under the leadership of the Office of the Premier has since been established. To date, a draft working document has been presented to the Mayors for inputs. Follow-up district road shows will be held with Mayors and MEC for Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) . In addition, having declared war on inadequate access to water for our people, we have started with targeted intervention where a War Room to support water services authorities has been created and it is fully functional.

DikgerekgereWednesdays wherein we were prioritising internal capacity for maintenance of our 13 500 km of unpaved roads, or our #ThibaMekoti campaign that focussed on patching potholes on the 6500 km of tarred roads.

We are, however, a resilient people that would not be deterred by such circumstances. Instead, challenges make us stronger and navigate better. We shall

overcome. We shall repair these roads, we are going to fix these bridges. In partnership with different stakeholders, including the SANDF, mining houses operating in our province and SANRAL we shall bridge over these troubled waters.

I made a call to community members to make input into my first State of the Province Address. Allow me, therefore, to firstly welcome some of the the responses and comments on our social media platforms. Majority of those emphasised attention required on various roads across the province. We may not be able to respond to all the individuals' comments today, we have therefore directed the MEC for Limpopo Department of Public Works Roads and Infrastructure to work with members of the Infrastructure Cluster to prioritise and classify various roads in our province, be it local, provincial or national roads.

This work will assist us in prioritisation of roads requiring urgent attention including the type of rehabilitation needed. The MEC for DPWRI will elaborate further during his budget vote speech.

The decision to establish the fund was taken by EXCO informed by the turnaround time in the classification and declaration of disaster in terms of Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002, not forgetting that climate change effects will be with us for a very long time. The MEC for Finance will give details on this matter during the Provincial Budget Speech because not only are roads and schools requiring this urgent funding, but health infrastructure, human settlements, libraries and all other public amenities.

After this we must earnestly plan around strengthening the provincial disaster management centre, its capacity to respond, its locations as well as resources to enable it to respond promptly to any disaster that strikes.

Reduce Poverty and Tackle the High Cost of Living

Many of our projects are now in full bloom, actively being implemented. However, we acknowledge that some flowers have not yet blossomed, specifically, the Lebowakgomo Emergency Medical Services, the PMU schools, Lemana and Thusanang schools. We call upon our dedicated team at the Department of Public Works, Roads and Infrastructure, alongside our implementing agencies to diligently finalise an action plan to ensure these projects equally flourish. Limpopo Department of Education stands as a steadfast lighthouse, illuminating the path toward quality basic education, as enshrined in Section 29(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. This section is not merely a legal obligation.

It is on that note that we are improving School Readiness by successfully implementing the National Integrated Early Childhood Development (ECD) Policy. This has allowed 138,226 children aged 0-4 years to access registered ECD programmes. We have funded, through our Department of Education 2,100 registered ECD centres and we have trained 720 practitioners on the National Curriculum Framework. We are doing this to lay a solid foundation for emergent literacy and mathematics. We have furthermore, invested in the future by having enrolled 40 ECD practitioners at the University of Venda to pursue a Bachelor of Education in Early Childhood Development.

This investment is like planting seeds that will grow into a forest of educated minds, ready to tackle the challenges of tomorrow and contributing to the exceeding of the 2% economic growth target that we are aspiring to achieve by 2029. Our Province has witnessed a remarkable rise in Grade 12 (matric) learner performance, with the overall pass rate soaring from 79.5% in 2023 to 85.1% in 2024. We want to take this opportunity to once more congratulate the Matric Class of 2024 which has made us proud as a province and helped us to be counted amongst the top 6 in the country. From having been at some stage, the permanent resident of number 9 to where we are today is no mean feat.

In this digital age, we are embracing the 4th Industrial Revolution (4IR) by equipping schools with technology that enhances teaching and learning. This commitment to innovation is not just about keeping pace; it is about leading the charge into a future where our learners are prepared to thrive.

Focus Schools

The Limpopo Department of Education is also placing focused attention on planning, resourcing and delivery. They are further designating Focus Schools that will offer curricula aligned to the economic sectors in the province. Prioritised Curriculum offerings and alignment will include subject fields such as Agriculture, Mining, Tourism, Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics (STEM) subjects. The implementation starts in the 2025/26 MTEF with a baseline of 27 Focus Schools already designated, including eight Schools of Agriculture that have been established with a target of 55 Focus Schools in the outer year of the MTEF. School infrastructure development is the final piece of our educational puzzle. We are dedicated to creating conducive.

We need a healthy community to grow the economy. In recent years we have seen an improvement in life expectancy. This is a result of our health interventions that are primary aimed at the enhancing longevity of our people. We have been able to increase life expectancy for women from the age of 56.6 in 2001 to the current 68.3. We have similarly been able to increase life expectancy for men from age 52.9 in 2001 to the current 63.2. This is attributed to our progressive response to management and treatment of infectious disease, mainly HIV/AIDS, TB, STI and Malaria. We are, however, concerned about the increase of burden of disease as a result non-communicable disease, the so-called lifestyle diseases.

We are calling on our people to desist from the abuse of substances and alcohol as these are the contributory factors to the high number of domestic and gender based violence and femicide as well as other serious crimes.

We are continuing with efforts to ensure that our province is a safe haven free from crime. The more reason our law enforcement agencies are on the ground daily fighting crime. We are setting up roadblocks, conducting awareness campaigns and fighting illegal mining. We have done well with coordination of campaigns on safety, road and social ills. We would like to extend our words of appreciation to you, to members of Legislature, members national assembly and NCOP, not forgetting all

executive mayors and mayors who heeded our call as Executive Council to support our Arrive Alive campaigns during festive season.

Road safety is everybody's business. Road safety is not just a festive season campaign, but an all-year round activity. As part of fighting poverty, our Social Development department is currently implementing social relief programmes wherein nearly 8,000 individuals facing hardship due to disasters and other social conditions are being assisted.

On the other hand COGHSTA's mandate is clear: to provide housing, access to basic services and economic opportunities. Out of the 4 555 units target, 4469 housing.

Units were completed including 54 for military veterans. This outstanding improved performance has resulted in additional R500 million allocation for 2023/24 and 2024/25 Financial Years. Lets take this opportunity to congratulate honourable tatana Basikopo Makamu for turning things around.

This is indeed an affirmation of the Stats SA report that Limpopo performs better than all provinces in providing formal dwelling. The creative industry has become part of our sunrise economy. Our recent successful bid to host Bafana Bafana after a very long time will go a long way not only in encouraging social cohesion but also positive economic spin-off for the entire province. We will continue to work with the municipality to make sure different sporting codes are hosted within our city. As endeavour to protect and preserve our culture and heritage our province continues to host the Marula and Mapungubwe Festivals.

Building a Capable, Ethical and Developmental State

The District Development Model has been largely implemented across the province wherein we have already appointed all MECs as DDM champions. Similarly, we have begun supporting municipalities by allowing the Executive Council to hold meetings in targeted municipalities in line with the DDM approach. We recently held our Extended Executive Council in line with the DDM approach in Lepelle-Nkumpi local municipality.

During our opening of the Legislature on the 02 of August 2024 following a number of complaints regarding dysfunctional Thabazimbi local municipality, we made a commitment that we will intervene and we will be decisive in our intervention. We would like to report that after a successful by-election a new council has been established and stabilisation process is progressing very well. Service delivery goes hand in hand with clean governance, investor confidence is dependent on clean governance. There are pockets of excellence within our municipalities. Honourable Speaker, join us in extending our congratulations to Capricorn District Municipality, led by Her Worship, Executive Mayor Cllr Mamedupi Teffo "Mothokoa wa mmaseboko" and Waterberg District Municipality, led by His Worship, Executive Mayor Councillor Jack Maeko, for attaining clean audits.

Their dedication to sound governance and financial accountability sets a commendable example, and we encourage all municipalities to follow their lead in

achieving clean audits and strengthening financial management. Additionally, several provincial departments have also achieved clean audits, reflecting good governance and prudent financial oversight. These include the Office of the Premier, Provincial Treasury, Department of Sport, Arts and Culture and the Limpopo Legislature and our entities the Limpopo Gambling Board, Limpopo Tourism Authority and Limpopo Connexion.

Limpopo is poised to play a significant role in the upcoming G20 meetings, hosting a series of important gatherings that will bring together global leaders and experts to discuss critical issues.

Table 1.5: Municipal Powers and Functions

Service	Local municipality authorities service	District authorities service
Air Pollution	Yes	
Building Regulation	Yes	
Electricity Reticulation	Yes	
Fire Fighting	No	Yes
Local Tourism	Yes	
Municipal Airports	Yes	
Municipal Planning	Yes	
Municipal Health	No	Yes
Municipal Public Transport	Yes	
Storm-water Management	Yes	
Trading Regulation	Yes	
Potable Water	Yes	
Sanitation	Yes	
Billboards and Display of Advertisement in Public Places	Yes	
Cemeteries Crematoria	Yes	
Cleansing	Yes	
Control of Public Nuisance	Yes	
Fencing and Fences	Yes	
Local Sports Facilities	Yes	
Municipal Parks and Recreation	Yes	

Service	Local municipality authorities service	District authorities service
Municipal Abattoirs	No	Yes
Municipal Roads	Yes	
Noise Pollution	Yes	
Public Places	Yes	Yes
Refuse Removal, Refuse Dumps and Solid Waste Disposal	Yes	
Street Trading	Yes	
Street Lighting	Yes	
Traffic and Parking	Yes	

Table 1.6: Municipal Priority Issues

Municipal Priorities		
No	Issues/Needs	
1.	Water and Sanitation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure that all households in formal and informal settlements in the Municipal area have access to basic level of water and sanitation To ensure that farms have access to water source To ensure that all (100%) of registered indigents have access to free basic services
2.	Electricity Reticulation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To increase access to electricity and ensure that all households in the municipality area have access to electricity.
3.	Municipal Roads and Storm water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure that internal roads in the municipality area are maintained and/or upgraded to facilitate economic and social activity required for the sustainable development of the municipality; considering the capacity limitations facing the Municipality To provide a safe environment for all road users

Municipal Priorities		
No	Issues/Needs	
4.	Refuse Removal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure that all households in urban areas have access to waste removal according to waste removal standards and good waste management in the municipal area by June 2024.
5.	Sport and Recreational Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure access to quality sport and recreational in the municipal area
6.	Traffic and Parking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure effective traffic management and parking in the municipal area
7.	Cemeteries and Crematoria	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure that there is sufficient burial space and effective management of cemeteries in the municipal area
8.	Sports, Arts and Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure access to quality sport and recreational in the municipal area
9.	Public Participation and Good Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthen and Improve Communication internally and externally Ensure Zero tolerance on fraud and corruption Improve current customer satisfaction To monitor, evaluate and improve the financial viability of the municipality.
10.	Municipal Support and Institutional Development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To facilitate institutional transformation and development in the municipality To ensure that the municipality has in place all the relevant prescribed policies and by-laws
11.	Planning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure an effective Planning that will promote proper spatial planning to address sustainable development and social cohesion To enhance land planning and property management To promote harmonious and coordinated land uses to achieve sustainable environment through Implementation

Municipal Priorities		
No	Issues/Needs	
		of SPLUMA and Modimolle-Mookgophong Land Use By-Law
12.	Local and Rural Economic Development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To create an environment conducive for investment and increased economic activity in the municipal area • Creating job opportunities through facilitation of business development • To increase agriculture production and processing • Stimulate and facilitate sustainable tourism • To upgrade the informal sector • To market the municipality and its opportunities that it offers
13.	Tourism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To create tourism establishments database • To put a tourism link on our municipal website



1.7. IDP PLANNING PROCESS

The following table portrays the structures/stakeholders, composition and the roles and responsibilities in respect of the Integrated Development Planning Process.

Table 1.7: Roles and Responsibilities

Structure/ Stakeholder	Composition	Roles and Responsibilities
Council	All Councillors	To approve the Process Plan and the IDP/Budget and SDBIP
Mayor/EXCO	Mayor and Executive Committee	Manage the drafting process, assign responsibilities and submit the draft plan to council for adoption must enforce implementation, monitoring and reporting. Chair meetings of IDP/Budget
IDP	Municipal Manager	The IDP section reports to the Manager Planning & Development Services, and is required to manage and co-ordinate the IDP review process, ensure IDP/Budget integration, the roll out of the performance management system and monitor the implementation of the IDP, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Preparing the process plan for the development of the IDP; • Day-to- day management of the IDP process; • Ensure involvement of different role-players; • Adjustments to the IDP in accordance with the MEC's proposals, as and when they are made; • Respond to IDP related comments and queries; • Ensure that the IDP is vertically and horizontally aligned;

Structure/ Stakeholder	Composition	Roles and Responsibilities
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensure proper documentation of the IDP; Submit the reviewed IDP to the relevant authorities
Steering Committee	Development planning Portfolio Committee Finance Portfolio Committee IDP Manager Managers Officials Sector Departments Heads	Municipal Manager ensures the Steering committee meets as per schedule. Oversee the whole IDP process and to take responsibility therefore. Provide relevant technical and financial support Contribute technical expertise in the consideration and finalization of strategies and identification of projects
Representative Forum	Ward Committees All Councillors NGOs Business Sector Faith based Organization representatives Sector Departments SOEs	Link the planning process to their wards. Assist in the organizing of public consultation and participation engagements. Draw up a ward plan that offers suggestions on how to improve service delivery in the particular ward. Disseminate information in the ward; and Monitor the implementation process concerning its area Support the alignment procedures between the municipalities and spheres of government and product related contributions at the IDP representative forum.

1.7.2. MEC FINAL IDP ASSESSMENT REPORT FOR 2024/25

According to the assessment template and guidelines of the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA) a credible Integrated Development Plan must comply with relevant legislation, be budgeted for, and be implemented through the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP). This is why the report also indicates whether projects reflected in the IDP (as a 5-year plan) are included in the SDBIPs (annual operational plans).

A satisfactory Integrated Development Plan (IDP) must comply with relevant legislation and convey the following:

- Consciousness by Municipalities of their constitutional and policy mandate for developmental local government;
- Awareness by municipalities of their role in the regional, provincial, and national context and economy;
- A comprehensive description of the area – the environment and its spatial characteristics;
- A clear strategy, based on local development needs;
- Insights into the trade-offs and commitments that are being made regarding economic choices, integrated service delivery etc;
- The key deliverables for the next 5 years;
- Clear measurable and funded budget;
- A indication of the capacity of municipality to perform its obligations;
- Communication, participatory and decision-making mechanisms;
- The degree of intergovernmental action and alignment of government-wide priorities; and
- Credible Sector Plans.

The IDP assessment template accentuated six Key Performance Areas (KPAs), namely:

- Spatial rationale;
- Basic service delivery and infrastructure development;
- Local economic development;
- Good governance and public participation;
- Financial viability; and
- Municipal transformation and organisational development

CoGHSTA has analyzed the thrust of the municipal IDPs in the province. It has been noted that most municipalities have not reviewed their sector plans as recommended in the 2023/2024 MEC’s Assessment Report, an anomaly that needs to be corrected in the 2024/2025 IDP review process. The sector plans should be developed / reviewed to support broader spatial vision of municipalities; hence, it is necessary that the review of these plans is aligned to the review of the IDP. CoGHSTA also analyzed the alignment of IDPs and SDBIPs to determine whether municipal projects reflected in the IDP/Budgets are the same as the ones in the SDBIPs. The consistency is commendable. However, in some municipalities, there needs to be an alignment of the IDPs and SDBIPs. The findings for the Mogalakwena Municipality are indicated below:

IDP Indicator Outcome :Satisfactory
IDP-SDBIP Alignment :Aligned-Sustained

Alignment Procedures

Vertical alignment: The development of IDP must have Cooperation, Coordination and Co- Planning between national, provincial sector departments and municipalities.

Horizontal alignment: There should be alignment of national and provincial projects and programmes responding to municipal strategies and strategic objectives.

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) review process in Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality is based on a combination of legal requirements, community needs, and performance monitoring. It ensures the IDP remains relevant, effective, and aligned with national and provincial priorities. Table 1.9 below shows the MEC’s IDP assessment report for the Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality.

Table 1.8: IDP MEC’s Assessment

IDP MEC’s Assessment					
Name of Municipality	2021/2022	2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/2025	2025/2026
Modimolle-Mookgophong	High	High	High	Satisfactory	High
Source: CoGHSTA 2026					

IDP Process Overview: Steps and Events

Section 28 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 as amended requires that the Municipal Council adopts the process plan that would guide the planning, drafting, adoption and review of the IDP, Budget and performance. The Process Plan should have a clear and established mechanisms, procedures and processes to ensure proper consultation with local communities. It should further indicate clearly how it will be rolled out, who will be responsible for what, time frames as milestones will be set and a budget aligned to the Programme.

Table 1.9: Summary of Phases and Activities of the IDP Process Plan

Stages/Phases of the IDP Process	
IDP Phases	Activities
Planning/Preparatory Phase	Identification and establishment of stakeholders and/or structures and sources of information. Development of the IDP Framework and Process Plan.
Analysis Phase	Compilation of levels of development and backlogs that suggest areas of intervention.
Strategies Phase	Reviewing the Vision, Mission, Strategies and Objectives.
Projects Phase	Identification of possible projects and their funding sources at this stage, SDBIPs must be drafted.
Integration Phase	Summaries of Sector plans and programs to be incorporated
Approval Phase	Submission of Draft IDP/Budget to Council SDBIP to be approved by the end of June. Legislative Publication of both IDP/Budget and SDBIP

IDP planning Phases	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Marc h	Apr	May	Ju n

Phase 1. Analysis											
Phase2: Strategies											
Phase 3: Projects											
Phase 4: Integration											
Phase 5: Approval											
Draft IDP/Budget 2024/2025											
Final IDP/Budget 2024/2025											



Public Participation											
-----------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

1.7.4. PROCESS FOR AMENDING AN ADOPTED IDP

In terms of Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001, only a member or committee of a municipal council may introduce a proposal for amending the municipality's integrated development plan in the council. Any proposal for amending a municipality's integrated development plan must be aligned with the framework adopted in terms of Section 27 of the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulation of 2001. In terms of the regulations, no amendment to a municipality's integrated development plan may be adopted by the municipal council unless: all the members of the council have been given reasonable notice; proposed amendment has been published for public comment for a period of at least 21 days in a manner that allows the public, an opportunity to make representations with regard to the proposed amendment; the municipality, if it is a district municipality, has consulted all the local municipalities in the area of the district municipality on the proposed amendment, and has taken all comments submitted to it by the local municipalities in that area into account before it takes a final decision on the proposed amendment.

Drafting and Adoption of Municipal Budget

The drafting of the Municipal budget is regulated in terms of the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003 (MFMA). Section 21(1) of the Municipal Finance Management Act states that the Mayor of a municipality must co-ordinate the processes for preparing the annual budget, and for reviewing the municipality's integrated development plan and budget-related policies to ensure that the tabled budget and any revisions of the integrated development plan and budget-related policies are mutually consistent.

Mechanisms for Public Participation

The following will be done to ensure widespread and effective stakeholder participation:



- **IDP Representative Forum**

This forum will be represented by all stakeholders and will be as inclusive as possible. Efforts will be made to bring additional organizations into the IDP Representative Forum and ensure their continuous participation throughout the process.

- **Media**

Local newspapers and posters will be used to inform the community of the progress of the IDP

- **Municipal Website**

- The Municipality's website will also be utilized to communicate and inform the community. Copies of the IDP will be placed on the website for community and stakeholders to download.
- IDP, Budget and O-PMS Activity Flow
- The IDP Operational and Steering Committee shall be involved in the drafting of the Framework and IDP Process Plan,
- The IDP Steering Committee will submit the Framework and Process Plan to Portfolio Committee head of IDP.
- The IDP Steering committee shall further submit the Framework to the IDP Representative Forum through the IDP Manager.
- The Portfolio Committee head of IDP Manager shall further submit the Framework and Process Plan to Executive Committee.
- The Municipal Manager shall facilitate the Steering Committee in the drafting of the IDP in all phases.
- The IDP Manager and the Municipal Manager shall monitor the planning in all phases, ensuring involvement of communities in determining performance criteria, targets, outcomes impact as well as adherence to time frames throughout.
- The Municipal Manager will initiate the review of the O-PMS Framework and policies.
- Section 56 Managers must ensure alignment between IDP, Budget and O-PMS (SDBIP).
- The Draft IDP/Budget and SDBIP shall be submitted to the Portfolio Committee for oversight.

- Section 56 managers will submit their SDBIP's to Portfolio Committee and sign Performance Agreements and SDBIP's annexures.
- The Draft IDP shall be submitted to EXCO for consideration and recommendation to council.
- The Mayor shall submit the Draft IDP/Budget to the Council through the Portfolio head.
- The Mayor shall approve the SDBIP 28 days after the adoption of the Final IDP and Budget.

IDP Process Plan: Monitoring, Evaluating and Reporting

The Municipal Manager and the Portfolio Committee will be responsible for monitoring the IDP Framework and Process Plan. The PMS will ensure that IDP process, strategies, projects and programs are achieved according to the set standards as approved by Council.

Mayors IDP Roadshows

The Mayor IDP Roadshows is regarded as another platform where municipal council consults with the community. At least two (2) IDP roadshows per ward are held in financial year. The schedule of this consultation will be reflected in the process plan. The main purpose of this consultation is to ensure that the political principals get closer to the communities and afford members of the community a chance to comment on the draft IDP.

Binding Plans and Planning Requirements

In order to further facilitate coordination and alignment between the spheres of government, the IDP's of municipalities must within the prescripts of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005 (IGR Act), reflect planning frameworks and plans of the other spheres of government. There are other critical binding requirements that emanate from local government legislation which the IDP's must comply with. See table below,



Table 1.9: Binding Requirements

Section 25 of MSA	Adoption of IDP
Section 26 of Municipal Systems Act	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Council's long term vision ▪ Critical development and internal transformation needs ▪ Existing level of development ▪ Access to basic municipal services ▪ Development priorities, objectives and strategies ▪ Spatial Development Framework ▪ Disaster Management Plan ▪ Financial Plan ▪ Performance Management System
Section 41 of MSA	PMS
Section 57 of MSA	Performance agreements
Section 12 of Water Services Act	Water Services Development Plan
Section 53 of Disaster Management Act	Disaster Management Plan
Section 11	Integrated Waste Management Plan
Section 9 of Housing Act of 1997	Housing Plan/Strategy
Section 16 of MFMA	Annual budget
Section 53 of MFMA	SDBIP
Section 111 of MFMA	Supply Chain Management Policy
Section 121 of MFMA	Annual Report

Figure 1: Structure of the IDP/ Budget process

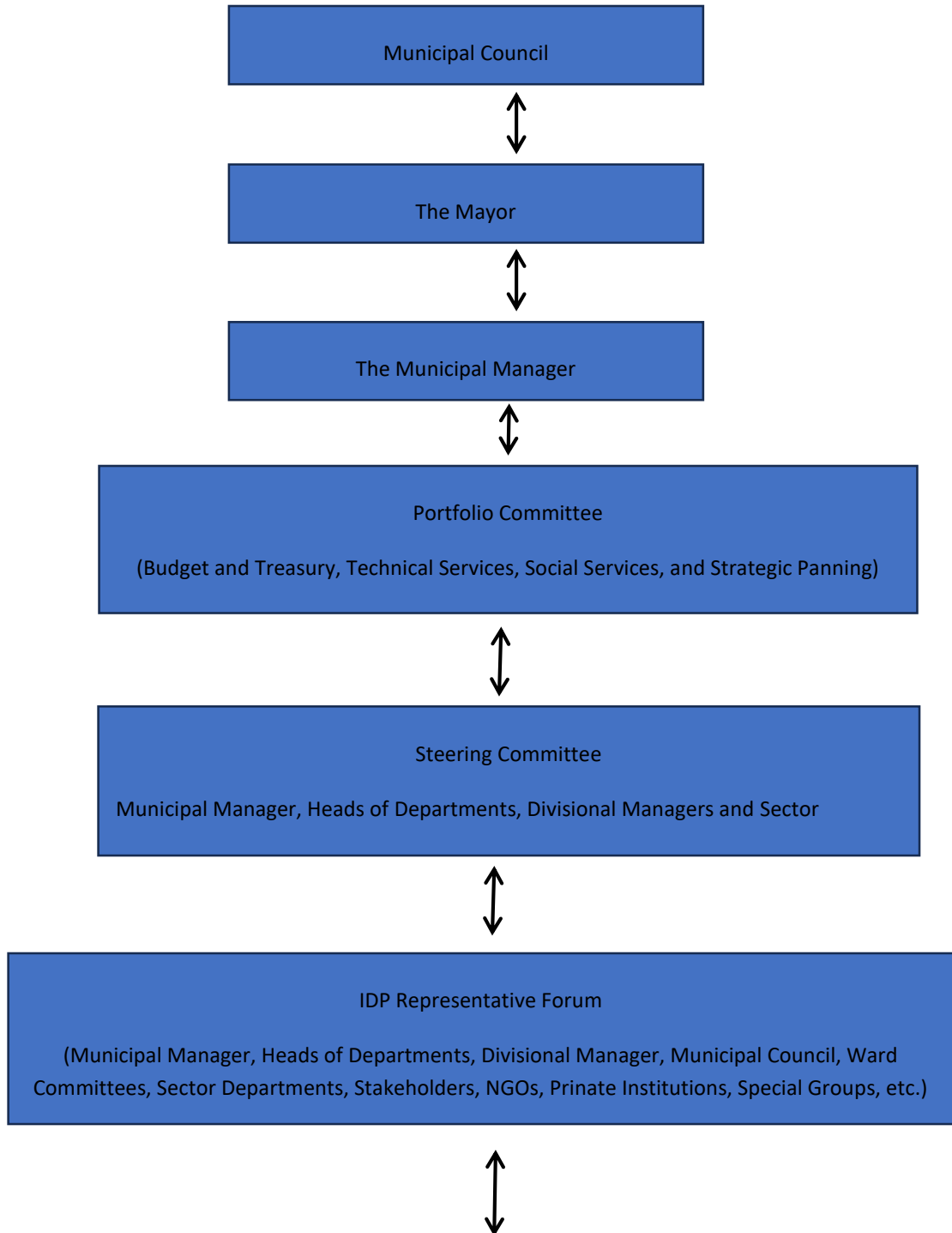




Table 1.10: mSCOA Budget and Risk Management Activities

Stape s	Priorities	Budget Process	mSCOA activity	Risk Management Activity	Time Frames
1	Planning	Preparation and tabling of Schedule of key deadlines	Download the latest mSCOA chart for implementation by Oct/Nov 2017 for use in budget compilation. Un pack “R & M” and other operational projects and all new capital projects into the mSCOA project segment	Identify and schedule key Risk Management activities aligned to the budget process Schedule	31 August
2	Strategisign	Strategic sessions to review IDP, Policies and set service delivery objectives. Consult on tariffs, indigent, credit control, free basic services, etc and consider local, provincial and National issues, previous year’s performance and current economic and demographic trends.	Capture the IDP in the mSCOA classification on system.	Identification of strategic risk that may hinder the achievement of objectives	September- November
3	Preparing	Preparation of revenue and expenditure projections (budget preparation)	Compilation of detailed budgets mSCOA classification across segments (2018/2019 MTREF)	Review of operational risks. Assessing of budget allocation in line with	December - February

				priorities and key risk identified	
4	Tabling	Table complete proposed budget, ID revisions and budget related policies to council	Table mSCOA complaint A1 schedule format and upload mSCOA data string on portal	Risk awareness and tabling of the risk policies and draft risk register to council	31 March
5	Approval	Council approves budget and related policies	Upload mSCOA data string of the final budget and IDP	Council approves the risk and fraud prevention policies	31 May – 30 June
6	Finalising	Preparation, Approval and publication of SDBIP Signing of performance agreements		Finalizations of the risk Strategic and operational risk register Inclusion of risk management responsibilities in Performance Management Agreements of Officials	June – July

Table 1.11: Summary of the Process Plan 2025/2026

DATE	ACTIVITY	RESPONSIBLE STAKEHOLDERS
FIRST QUARTER PREPARATORY PHASE		
25-26 June 2025	1 st Provincial Development Planning Forum	Premiers Office
17-18 July 2025	1 st IDP/PMS Managers Meeting (IDP/Budget and O-PMS Framework/Process Plan Review)	District Municipality
22-24 July 2025	1 st Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
31 July 2025	Section 52(d) of MFMA Reports	Local Mayor
31 July 2025	1 st Ordinary Council Meeting	Local Mayor
11 August 2025	1 st Municipal Manager's Forum	District Municipality
12 August 2025	1st IDP/Budget and O-PMS Steering Committee (Preparatory Phase)	Local Mayor
14 August 2025	1 st WDM IDP/Budget & O-PMS Steering Committee	District Municipality
15 August 2025	1 st IGR Meeting	District Municipality
18 August 2025	2 nd Provincial Development Planning Forum	Premiers Office
20 August 2025	1st IDP/Budget and O-PMS Rep Forum (Preparatory Phase)	Local Mayor
21 August 2025	1 st WDM IDP/Budget & O-PMS Rep Forum	District Municipality
29 August 2025	1st Special Council Meeting Approval of Final IDP/Budget and O-PMS Process Plan 2026/2027	Municipal Council

August 2025	Submission of the AFS and Annual Performance Report to AGSA	Accounting Officer
01 to 30 September 2025	IDP/Budget and O-PMS Community Based Planning Meetings	Local Mayor
01-02 September 2025	1 st District IDP Engagement Session (Analysis Phase)	District Municipality
23 September 2025	2 nd Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
SECOND QUARTER ANALYSIS PHASE		
07 October 2025	2nd IDP/Budget and O-PMS Steering Committee (Analysis Phase)	Local Mayor
14 October 2025	2nd IDP/Budget and O-PMS Rep Forum (Analysis Phase)	Local Mayor
21-23 October 2025	3 rd Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
23-24 October 2025	2 nd IDP/PMS Managers Meeting	District Municipality
30 October 2025	2 nd Municipal Manager's Forum	District Municipality
31 October 2025	2 nd Ordinary Council Meeting	Local Mayor
October 2025	MFMA Section 52(d) of MFMA Reports	Accounting Officer
07 November 2025	2 nd IGR Meeting	District Municipality
14 November 2025	2 nd WDM IDP/Budget & O-PMS Steering Committee	District Municipality
17-18 November 2025	2 nd District IDP Engagement Session (Strategies Phase)	District Municipality
20-21 November 2025	4 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
21 November 2025	2 nd WDM IDP/Budget & O-PMS Rep Forum	District Municipality

28 November 2025	2 nd Special Council Meeting	Municipal Council
05 December 2025	3 rd Provincial Development Planning Forum	Premiers Office
THIRD QUARTER STRATEGIES AND PROJECT PHASE		
20-23 January 2026	5 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
29-30 January 2026	3 rd District IDP Engagement Session (Project Phase)	District Municipality
30 January 2026	3 rd Ordinary Council Meeting	Local Mayor
30 January 2026	Section 52(d) of MFMA Report	Mayor
30 January 2026	Section 72 Report	Accounting Officer
30 January 2026	Tabling of Draft 2024/2025 Annual Report	Accounting Officer
04-06 February 2026	IDP/Budget and O-PMS Strategic Planning Session	Accounting Officer
12 February 2026	3 rd Municipal Manager's Forum	District Municipality
18 February 2026	Mid-Year Assessment Engagement	Accounting Officer
19 February 2026	6 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
19 February 2026	3 rd IGR Meeting	District Municipality
27 February 2026	3 rd Special Council for Budget Adjustment	Municipal Council
2-4 March 2026	WDM Strategic Planning Session	District Municipality

03 March 2026	3 rd IDP/Budget and O-PMS Steering Committee (Strategies Phase)	Local Mayor
05 March 2026	4 th Provincial Development Planning Forum	Premiers Office
10 March 2026	3 rd IDP/Budget & O-PMS Rep Forum (Strategies Phase)	Local Mayor
13 March 2026	3 rd WDM IDP/Budget and O-PMS Steering Committee	District Municipality
16-17 March 2026	3 rd IDP/PMS Managers Meeting	District Municipality
20 March 2026	3 rd WDM IDP/Budget and O-PMS Rep Forum	District Municipality
24 March 2026	7 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
30 March 2026	4 th Special Council for Tabling of Draft IDP/Budget and O-PMS 2026/2027	Municipal Council
31 March 2026	Approval of Oversight Report on the 2024/2025 Annual Report	Accounting Officer
FOURTH QUARTER INTEGRATION PHASE		
01-30 April 2026	IDP/Budget and O-PMS Public Participation Meetings	Local Mayor
14-16 April 2026	8 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
23 April 2026	Budget and Benchmark Assessment	Accounting Officer
26 April 2026	Tabling of Section 52(d) of MFMA Report	Local Mayor
30 April 2026	4 th Ordinary Council Meeting	Local Mayor
07 May 2026	4 th IDP/Budget Steering Committee (Project Phase)	Local Mayor

11-12 May 2026	4 th IDP/PMS Managers Meeting	District Municipality
13 May 2026	4th IDP/Budget and O-PMS Rep Forum Meeting (Project Phase)	Local Mayor
14 May 2026	4 th Municipal Manager's Forum	District municipality
15 May 2026	4 th WDM IDP/Budget Steering Committee	District Municipality
21 May 2026	9 th Portfolio Committees	Accounting Officer
21 May 2026	4 th IGR Meeting	District Municipality
22 May 2026	4 th WDM IDP/Budget Rep Forum	District Municipality
29 May 2026	5th Special Council for Adoption of Final IDP/Budget 2026/2027	Municipal Council
28 June 2026	Approved of Final SDBIP 2026/2027	Local Mayor

The IDP Review Process Plan as being part of IDP Planning preparation phase ensures that, the role players within the process are well prepared. This document will serve as a binding plan which must be followed by all in the review of the 2025/2026 IDP and the compilation of the 2026/2027 IDP.

CHAPTER 2: MUNICIPAL PROFILE AND SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

2.1 MUNICIPAL PROFILE DESCRIPTION

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality was established and officially proclaimed in terms of section 12 notice of Limpopo Provincial Gazette no: 2735, titled: “Notice in terms of 512 of the Local Government Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 Of 1998) Disestablishment of existing Municipalities and establishment of the new Municipalities’ “dated 22nd July 2016 issued by the member of the Executive council (MEC). The Municipality is **10 497** square kilometres with a population of **130 113** people and contributes 17,1% of the district population. After amalgamation the Municipality remained a Grade 3 Municipality.

2.2 GEOGRAPHIC LOCATION

Modimolle -Mookgophong is located within the Waterberg District Municipality situated in the Limpopo Province. The municipality is situated in the south-eastern corner of the district municipality and is bordered by Bela-Bela municipality in the South-west; Mogalakwena Municipality in the north and by the Capricorn District Municipality in the north and north-east and the Sekhukhune District Municipality in the south and south-east. The Municipality is strategically located on the R101 passing through it. The R101 connects the Municipality with Pretoria on the South passing through the municipality’s major towns (Modimolle and Mookgophong) to Polokwane on the North.

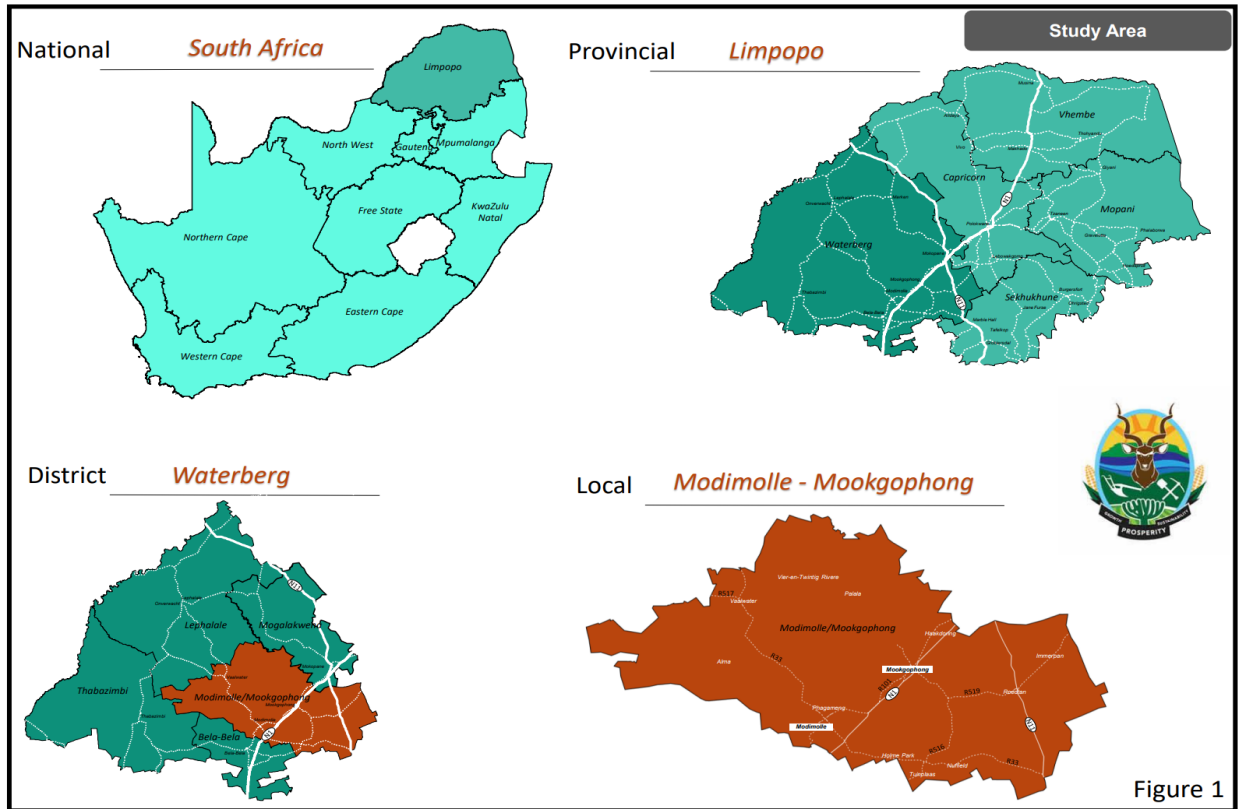
2.3 SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

2.3.1. DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE

Statistics SA 2022 reflects that **Population is at 130 113**, with **46 119 Households**. The average size per household is 3 persons. It could be assumed that the average population growth rate in our Municipality will be similar to the provincial population growth rate of 0.94% per year. The higher population growth rate of the past decade was caused by people migrating from rural areas to Modimolle and Mookgophong towns, but this migration process has now stabilized. Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population

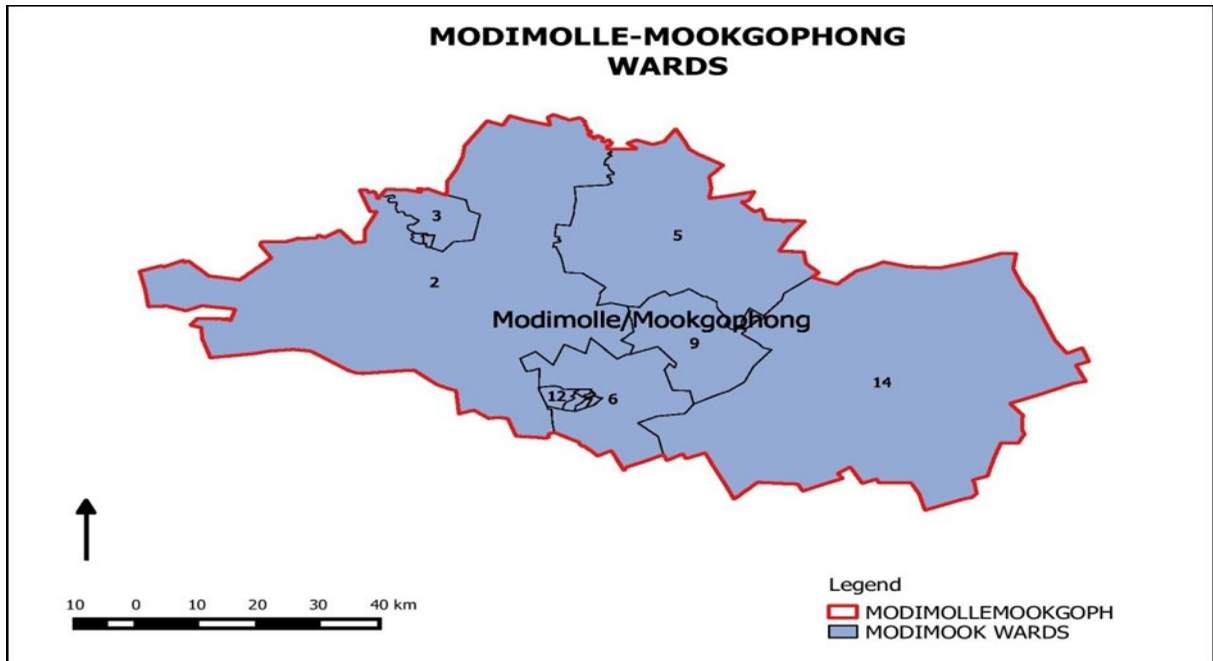
growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

Map 1: Municipality's Geographic Location in South Africa



Source: Coghsta GIS

Map 2: Municipal Wards



Source: CoGHSTA GIS

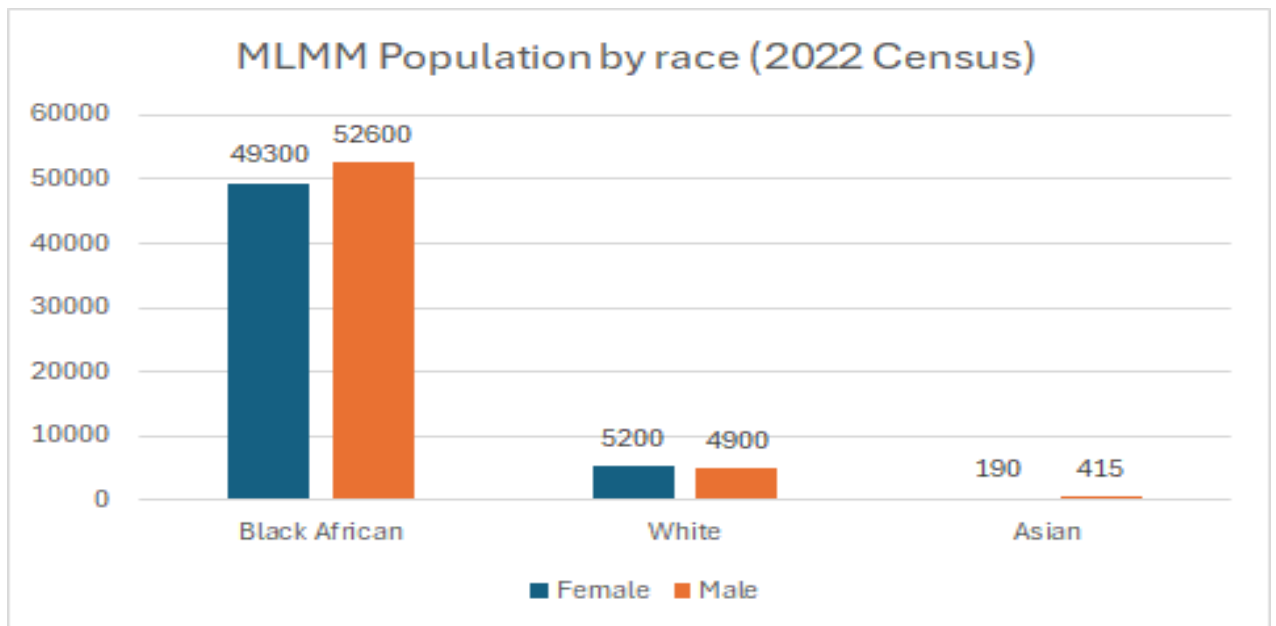
Table 2.1: Race Profile/Population Group, Gender and Age

Race	African		White		Asian	
	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male
00-04	5 110	5 160	159	271	3	4
05-09	5 290	5 180	218	217	18	19
10-14	5 130	4 880	206	267	32	27
15-19	3 570	3 990	164	230	15	21
20-24	4 360	4 980	234	206	8	53
25-29	4 800	6 260	171	172	5	42
30-34	5 160	6 850	215	210	15	28
35-39	4 850	5 940	227	274	22	65

40-44	3 140	3 470	317	339	0	49
45-49	1 840	1 900	319	263	20	38
50-54	1 520	1 420	250	257	28	19
55-59	1 580	1 030	292	205	9	31
60-64	1 090	584	294	275	3	1
65-69	845	493	510	379	0	9
70-74	570	267	680	493	4	5
75+	442	231	1 030	850	8	5
Total	49 300	52 600	5 290	4 900	190	415

Source: SatsSA, Census 2022

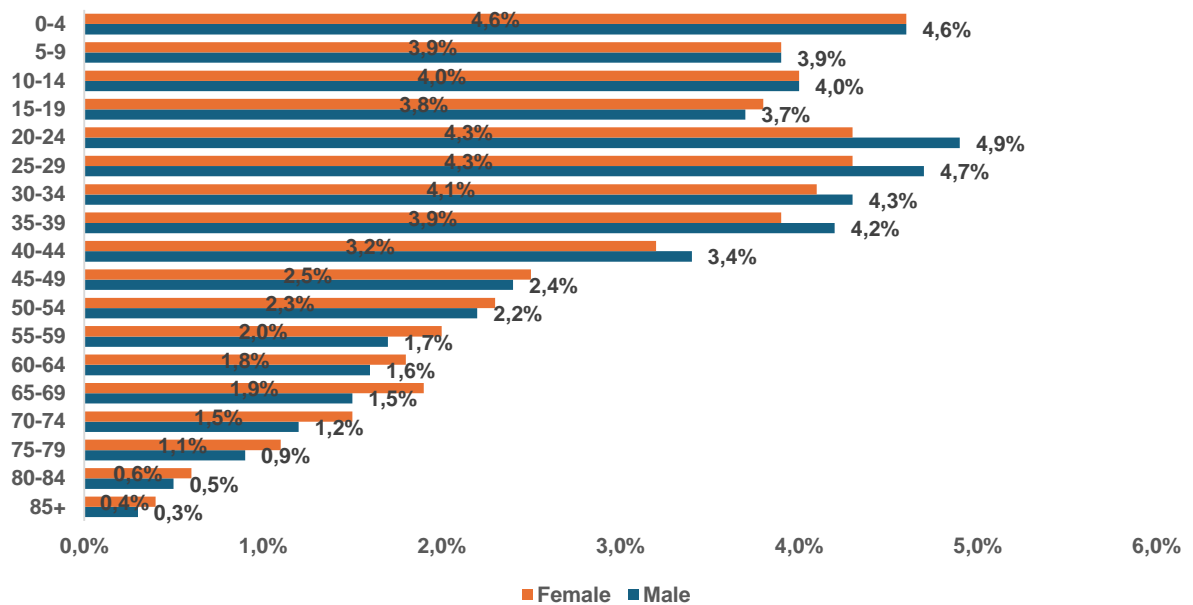
Figure 2: MMLM Population by Race



Source: Stats SA 2022

The population group in Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality is dominated by the Black African people who constitute 81,2% in 2022 with the White community at 17,6%, followed by Indian/Asian at 0,5% while both Coloured and others constitute 0,4% respectively. The figure below reflects the rate of the population group between the period 2011 to 2022.

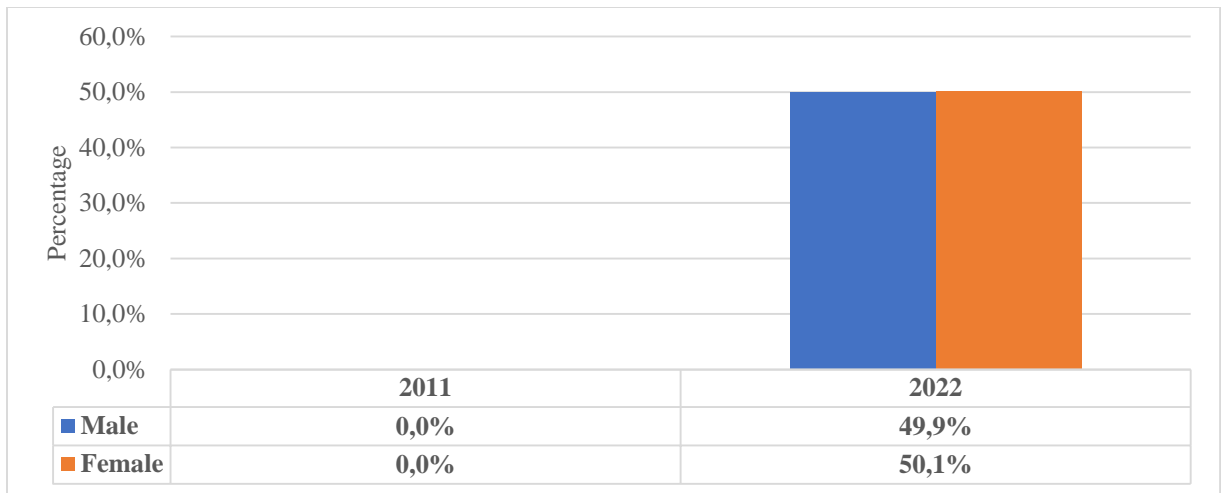
Table 2.2: Municipal Age Distribution



Source: Stats SA 2022

The median age in South Africa as of 2019 is 27,6 years while the highest age group was children aged 0 – 14 years followed by the 25 – 34 years. The trend is similar with Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality which reflect the age group. In this regard, MMLM has the highest number of its population being young people as compared to the elderly as reflected in the figure below as of 2022. This age distribution seeks to enlighten the municipality as to the key focus when it plans for the provision of services.

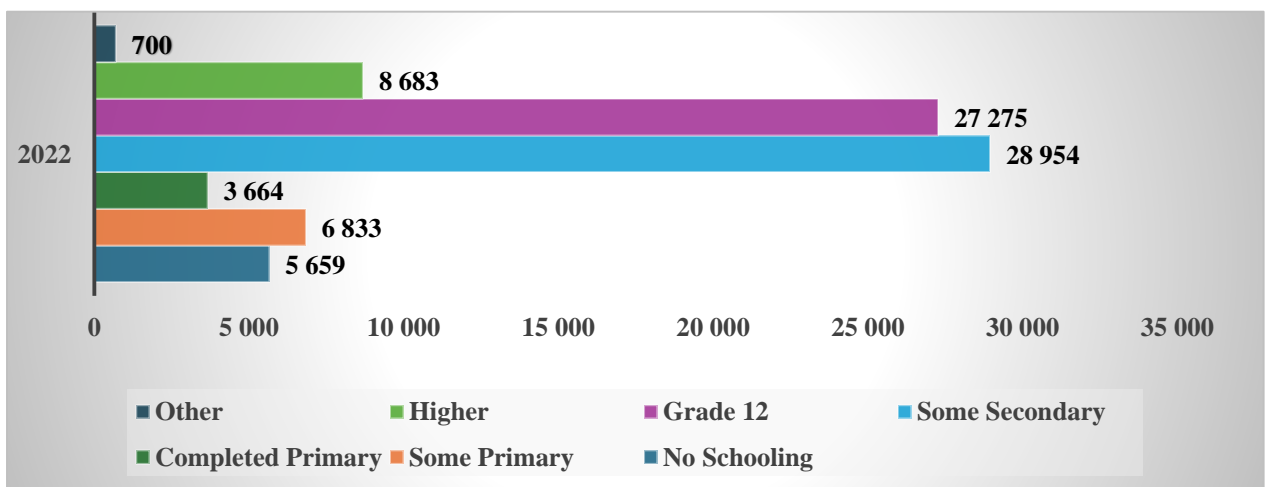
Table 2.3: Gender Distribution



Source: Stats SA 2022

The statistics for 2011 would not be flagged due to the fact that the municipality was only established in 2016. According to the figure below, the number of males within the municipality are at 49,9% while females stand at 50,1%. There is just a marginal gap between male and female populations within the municipality.

Table 2.4: Educational Level



Source: Stats SA 2022

According to the figure above, the number of people with higher education is 8 683 in 2022 while those with Grade 12 are 27 275. The number of persons with some secondary is recorded as 28 954 in 2022 while those who completed primary are 3 664 in total. Those with some primary schooling are accounted for at 6 833 while those with no schooling are recorded at 5 669. The low level of skills imply that the municipality has a high illiteracy rate which will affect its strategic objectives.

Table 2.5: Number of People with Disabilities (Male)

Gender	Disability	No Difficulty	Some Difficulty	A lot of Difficulty	Cannot do at all
Male	Seeing	53699	3701	757	36
	Hearing	55660	2111	381	40
	Communication	57152	847	158	48
	Walking	56117	1526	444	117
	Remembering	56737	1193	239	31
	Self-care	57204	699	192	112
	Total	58151	7257	1714	274

Source: Stats SA 2022

Table 2.6: Number of People with Disabilities (Female)

Gender	Disability	No Difficulty	Some Difficulty	A lot of Difficulty	Cannot do at all
Female	Seeing	52728	4770	956	45
	Hearing	56142	1984	356	22
	Communication	57529	790	142	37

	Walking	55361	2372	675	96
	Remembering	56791	1431	251	30
	Self-care	57334	828	236	106
	Total	58418	8619	2034	206

Source: Stats SA 2022

Table 2.7: Gross Domestic Product Regional

Sector	R million 2019	Percentage share
Agriculture, forestry & fishing	R1,185	11,5%
Mining & quarrying	R266	2,6%
Manufacturing	R907	8,8%
Electricity, gas & water	R190	1,8%
Construction	R1,122	10,9%
Wholesale & retail, catering & accommodation	R1,925	18,6%
Transport, storage & communication	R636	6,2%
Finance, insurance, real estate & business services	R2,124	20,6%
General government	R1,476	14,3%
Community, social & personal services	R492	4,8%
TOTAL	R10,322	100%

Source: Stats SA 2022

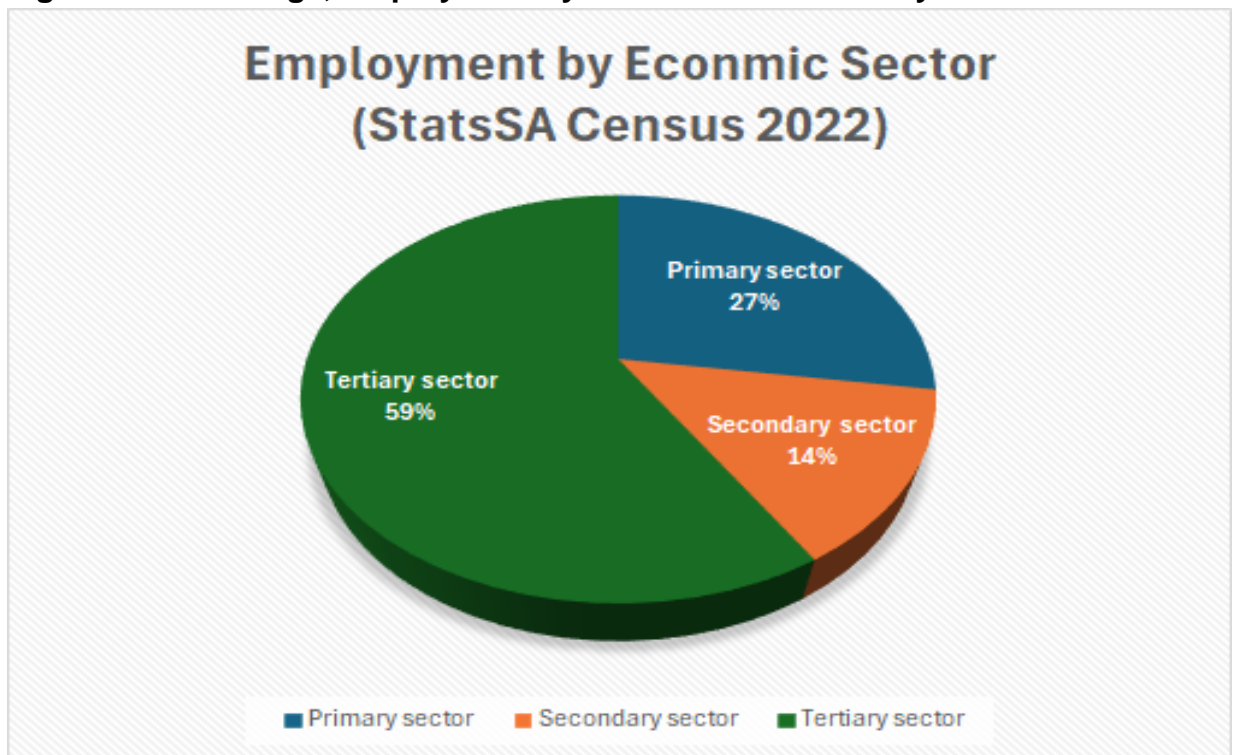
In terms of the economic factors, the figure below highlights the Gross Domestic Product Region within the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality and the growth projections until 2026. What is key to note is that it has been growing since 2016.

2.3.2. EMPLOYMENT/ UNEMPLOYMENT LEVELS AT MMLM AND WDM

The employment profile of the municipality, showing the unemployment levels, covers the working population of between the ages of 15 and 65 years, who are currently not working, but who are actively looking for work. It therefore excludes

people who are not actively seeking work (referred to as discouraged work seekers).

Figure 3: Percentage, Employment by Sector of the economy



Source: Stats SA 2022

According to Quantec (2020), during the 2019 period, the primary sector employed 27,41% of the working population, the secondary sector employed 13,81% of the working population while the tertiary sector employed 58,78% of the working population. This implies that the tertiary sector is the biggest employer within the municipality as depicted in the above figure.

Table 2.8: Total Employment Mookgopong/Modimolle, Waterberg, Limpopo

Year	Modimolle/Mookgophong	Waterberg	Limpopo
2019	40 800	240 000	1 320 000
2020	38 500	221 000	1 230 000
2021	36 600	206 000	1 170 000

2022	37 700	215 000	1 230 000
2023	39 900	234 000	1 330 000

Source: Stats SA 2022

Table 2.9: Total Employment per Broad Economic Sector

Sector	Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality	Total Waterberg
Agriculture	6 730	24 858
Mining	598	33 966
Manufacturing	2 830	11 837
Electricity	192	2 818
Construction	4 070	25 793
Trade	9 160	45 802
Transport	1 390	7 110
Finance	3 410	20 762
Community	7 880	42 125
Households	3 630	18 441
Total	39 900	233 514

Source: Stats SA 2022

Mookgophong/Modimolle Local Municipality employs a total number of 39 900 people within its local municipality. In Mookgophong/Modimolle Local Municipality the economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2023 were the trade sector with a total of 9 160 employed people or 23.0% of total employment in the local municipality. The community services sector with a total of 7 880 (19.8%) employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 192 (0.5%) is the sector that employs the

least spglobal.com Statistical Overview | 38 number of people in Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality, followed by the mining sector with 598 (1.5%) people.

Table 2.10: Unemployment Rate

Year	Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality	Waterberg	Mmlm as % of District Municipality
2020	6120	56 500	10,8
2021	7920	73 600	10,8
2022	8980	84 000	10,7

Source: Stats SA 2022

2.3.3. NUMBER OF WARDS IN MMLM

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has fourteen (14) wards within its area of jurisdiction, and who make up council through a composition of ward councillors.

CHAPTER 3: KPA 1 SPATIAL RATIONAL

The Strength, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats (SWOT) analysis of Modimolle-Mookgopong Local Municipality is a strategic planning technique used to evaluate the organization's strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats. It helps the municipality to understand the internal capabilities and external environment, and enables the making of informed decisions and development of effective strategies. The SWOT for MMLM has been developed by a joined strategic planning session of council and senior management in December 2024, and the results are shown in table 1 below.

3.1. SPATIAL RATIONALE

This section outlines how the municipality strives to integrate issues of planning and community development. According to Section 26 of the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) the Municipal Spatial Development Framework (MSDF) must be aligned to the IDP. All other spatial plans must be aligned with the MSDF. Therefore, no spatial plan of the municipality may contradict the MSDF or the IDP

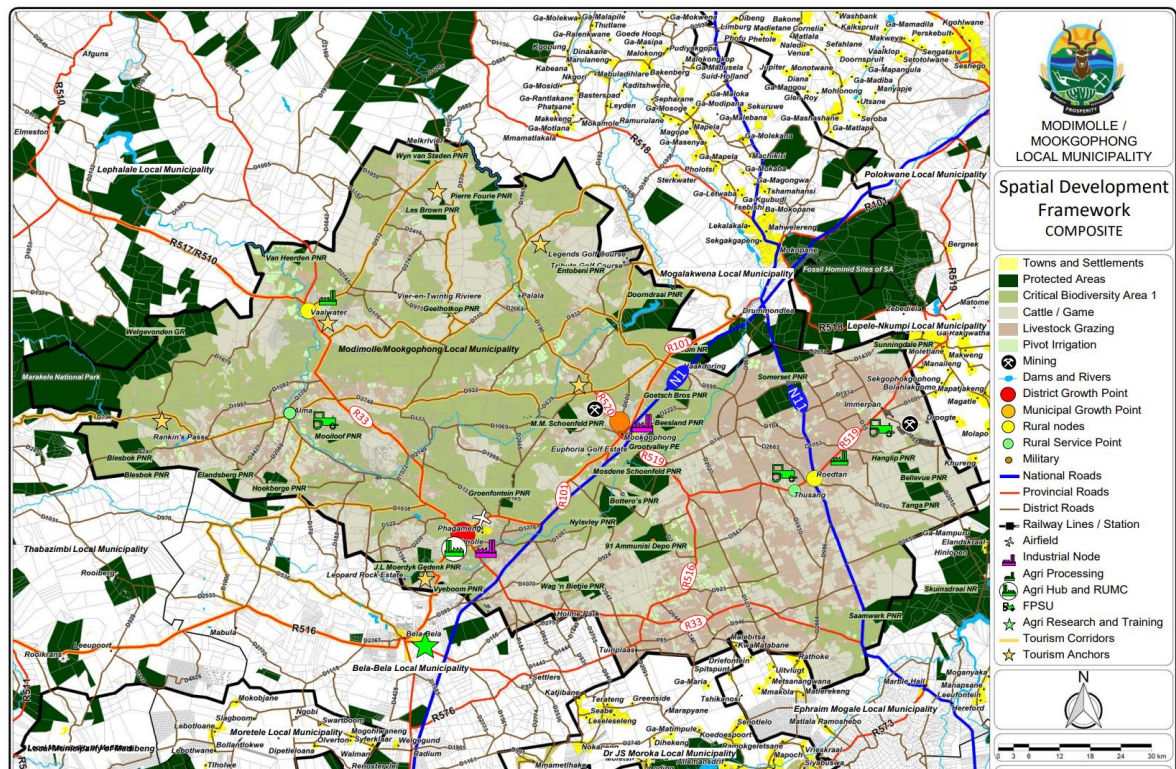
3.1.1. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs) serve to provide strategic direction and align the efforts of all government spheres as they apply within the municipal area. The SDF serves to give a coherent spatial direction to the municipal Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and provide a planned and integrated approach to achieve the shared spatial development vision, goals, and objectives for sector plans of government over the short term (5 years) as well as over the strategically longer term (10–20 years) to achieve the desired spatial growth and development pattern of the municipality. Most importantly, the SDF outlines the municipality's spatial agenda for its service departments, ensuring that their sector plans, programmes, and projects are grounded in sound and common spatial logic.

In essence, the SDF is a spatial contract between all spheres of government as well as the private sector, which is binding and must assist in integrating, coordinating, aligning, and expressing development efforts. It should be actively supported through the specific arrangement of prioritising, mobilising, sequencing, and implementing investment in priority spatial structuring areas to achieve the legislated development principles of sustainable development. In broad terms, this includes where infrastructure and public facility investment will be prioritised, where private sector partners will be sought in development, and how the municipality will view development applications through its spatial planning and land use management system.

3.1.2. MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG SDF, 2021

With the enactment of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act No. 16 of 2013) (SPLUMA), a new planning regime was introduced in South Africa. The coherent legislative system has been designed to spatially transform the country in its democratic era.



At the municipal sphere of government, aligned with SPLUMA, and the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000), the Modimolle- Mookgophong Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Bylaw, 2019 outlines minimum standards for SDFs, both in the preparation process and content. In support of SPLUMA, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (now known as the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform, and Rural Development) prepared a detailed process and content entitled “Guidelines for the Development of Provincial, Regional and Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks and Precinct Plans.” The Modimolle- Mookgophong local Municipality followed these legislative frameworks and guidelines in its work on the municipal SDF in the year 2021, which is subjected to an extensive review every five years, with less comprehensive reviews annually.

3.1.3. MMLM SPATIAL VISION

In line with the directives emanating from national, provincial and regional policies and legislation, the following key principles towards a future Spatial Vision for the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality have been defined:

- To protect the natural resources which present the foundation of the municipal economy (agriculture and tourism).
- To optimize the tourism potential in the Waterberg Biosphere in the northern parts of the municipality.
- To enhance agricultural production (food security) and agri processing (job creation) in the high potential agricultural areas towards the south of the municipality.
- To consolidate human settlement, community facilities, business and industrial activities in and around a number of urban and rural development nodes within the municipality (spatial targeting).
- To promote inter- and intra-regional connectivity via a number of road and rail based transport corridors which link all the development nodes to one another and to surrounding regions.
- To actively manage the spatial structure, land use composition and development density in each of the development nodes in order to promote spatial transformation and justice; spatial efficiency; spatial sustainability; as well as resilience to climate and economic shocks.
- To actively pursue opportunities to introduce energy efficient and environmentally sustainable infrastructure and technology.

3.1.4. HIERARCHY OF NODAL POINTS

Nodal points are towns/settlements or a group of areas located relatively close to each other where some form of economic, social and institutional activities, and a substantial number of people are usually found. These growth points seem to have a natural growth potential, but do not develop to their full potential because capital investments are made on an ad hoc basis without any long term strategy for the area. The nodal points should be stimulated by amongst others, providing a higher level of service infrastructure which will ensure that appropriate services are available for potential business and service/light industrial concerns.

The higher level of services, relative to other settlements in the area will also attract residential development to these growth points, with the implication that certain threshold values in population be reached, to provide for higher levels of social, physical, institutional and economic services.

Table 3.1: Modimolle-Mookgophong Growth and Development Nodes

Nodes	Settlement
PGP (Provincial Growth Point)	Modimolle Town
MGP (Municipal Growth Point)	Mookgophong
LSP (local Service Point) Local/Rural Services	Roedtan Alma Vaalwater

Source: Limpopo Provincial Spatial Rationale and MMLM SDF 2021

Table 3.2: Hierarchy of Settlements

No	Areas
1st Order	Modimolle
2 nd Order	Mookgophong
3 rd Order	Vaalwater
4 th Order	Roedtan
5 th Order	Alma

Source: MMLM SDF 2021

Table 3.3: Hierarchy of Settlements and Growth Points Area

No	Own	Hierarchy	Community Facilities	Economic Activities
1	Modimolle-Phagameng	District Growth Point	Higher Order	Comprehensive Regional/National
2	Mookgophong	Municipal Growth Point	Middle Order	Comprehensive Local
3	Vaalwater-Leseding	Rural Node	Lower Order	Limited Regional/Local
4	Roedtan-Thusang	Rural Node Rural Service Point	Lower Order	Limited Regional/Local
5	Alma-Mabaleng		Basic/Mobile Selected Service Delivery Centre	Agriculture

Source:MMLM SDF 2021

3.2 LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEME, 2023 (LUMS)

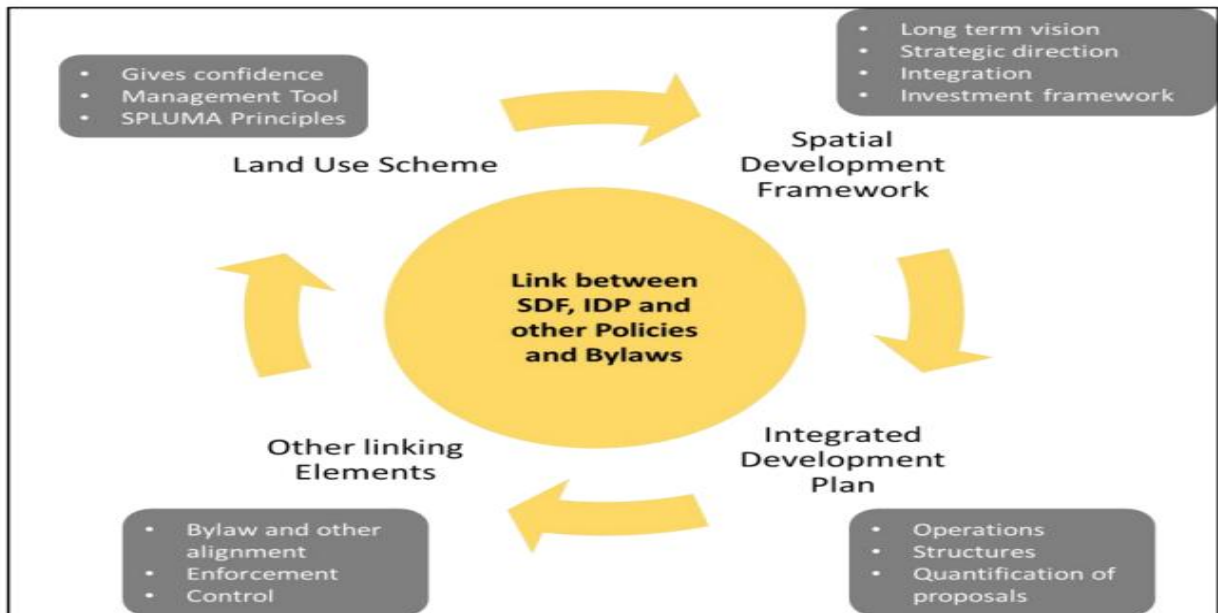
The Modimolle-Mookgophong Land Use Management Scheme was compiled in accordance with the vision, strategies, and policies of the Modimolle-Mookgophong Spatial Development Framework in the interests of the general public to promote sustainable development and quality of life. The Scheme is applicable to the area of jurisdiction of the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality, as proclaimed.

In accordance with Section 25 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act 16 of 2013), the land use scheme must give effect to and be consistent with the municipal spatial development framework and determine the use and development of land within the municipal area to which it relates in order to promote:

- economic growth;
- social inclusion;
- efficient land development; and
- Minimal impact on public health, the environment, and natural resources.

The following figure demonstrates the interrelationship between the Spatial Development Framework, Integrated Development Plan and the Land Use Management Scheme.

Figure 3: Linkages of SDP, IDP and other Policies and Bylaws



The Municipality is responsible for updating the electronic zoning map, the electronic database, the register and this Scheme regularly, based on approvals granted from time to time. Amendments to the zoning map shall be shown on the official zoning map, which must be updated at least every 6 months. Hard copies of current zoning maps are available at the Municipal offices for inspection by the public.

Table 3.4: Land Use Challenges and Opportunities

Land Use Challenges	Land Use Opportunities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Illegal occupation of land within proclaimed Township (Informal Structure) - Lots of stands are still vacant and the majority of those stands are not owned by the municipality - Illegal land use within the municipality which need to be formalized so that revenue collection can improve (e.g. Lodges on agricultural land, change of land use rights). - incomplete township establishment - Insufficient municipal owned land for human settlements. - Mushrooming of informal settlement. - Delay in land donation for integrated human settlement by sector department. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Properties are still affordable for investment. - Establishment of the middle income housing units. - Identification of illegal land use and issuing of penalty fines. - Availability of land for business or residential expansion. - Informal in situ in areas earmarked for potential priority for housing development.

3.3 GEOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION SYSTEM (GIS)

The power of a GIS comes from the ability to relate different types of information in a spatial context and reach a conclusion about their relationship. A GIS expands the two-dimensional nature of a map to include information from a database. It is a tool used to inventory resources and infrastructure, plan transportation routing,



improve public service delivery, manage land development and administration, and generate revenue by increasing economic activity.

A fully functional GIS system could assist the municipality with property management; property assessment and taxation; land use planning and development management; license and permit issuance; inspections; spatial planning, transportation and utilities; facility and infrastructure development. The municipality has a GIS Unit in the Town Planning Section under the Strategic Planning and Economic Development Department. The GIS Unit is staffed with only one GIS Officer. The Unit is functional. The municipality has adopted a fully comprehensive GIS implementation plan for which will guide in terms of rolling out the GIS for the purpose of implementing SPLUMA and as well as improving sustainable service delivery within the municipality.

3.4 HOUSING DEVELOPMENT

Municipalities are required to ensure that people within their municipal areas have access to adequate housing, and to take steps within the framework of the national and provincial policy to realize this objective and also set aside, plan, and manage land for community developments in line with the housing priorities identified in the Integrated Development Plans (IDPs).

3.4.1. LOW-COST HOUSING

The Limpopo Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA) in compliance with the housing act Act 107 of 1997 is on annually basis allocate number of low cost units which are constructed across all municipalities in the province including Modimolle-Mokgophong Local Municipality.

Table 3.5: Low Cost Housing

Financial year	2024/25	2025/26	2026/27
Number of units	160	86	86

Source:?

Table 3.7: Housing Backlog

Area	Estimated backlog
Modimolle	8000
Mookgophong	6500
Vaalwater	3500

Roetan	2000
Alma	1000

Source: MMLM 2025

3.4.4. ILLEGAL OCCUPATION OF LAND

Illegal occupants of land cause distress to the Municipality for basic services provision. Dense settlements comprising communities housed in self-constructed shelters under conditions of informal land tenure. Informal settlement is typically the product of an urgent need for shelter by the urban poor. Below is a table showing Modimolle-Mookgophong informal settlements and their locations.

Table 3.8: Informal Settlements

Modimolle	Mookgophong	Vaalwater	Roedtan	Alma
Phagameng Ext 12 (718)-	Ptn 69 Naboomspruit	Portion 4/136 Vaalwater	Thusang Ext 1(Ptn	Re/24/ Knopfontein
Phagameng along R101 (221)-	348 KR(130)- Adjacent to	KR(940)- Vaalwater	5/Klavervaller 616KS) (165)	184 KR (150)
Phagameng next to Ext 8 (1304) -	Mookgophong Ext 3	Ext 2 (Erf 3047)(33)-		
Phagameng next to Ext 11 zuma section(250)-	(61/530)(320)- Mookgophong	Portion 7/137KR(72)-		
Phagameng next to airfield (1189)-	Ext 8(1200)	Vaalwater Ext 4 (Re/2/137KR) (301)-		
Opposite hospital next to Phagameng Ext 7(187)		Leseding Ext 6 (272)		

3.4.5. LAND RESTITUTION AND LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS

In terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act 22 of 1994, the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act 3 of 1996 and the Extension of Security of Tenure Act 62 Of 1997, members of communities who has been dispossessed of land after 19 June 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory laws were given an opportunity to practices their right to restitution of that property or to fair compensation.

Land claims and land restitution is a very important albeit a contentious issue. However, from a spatial planning point of view land ownership does not necessarily

determine the preferred use of land. The land restitution process can restrict investment and economic activity over the short and medium term but should not have an impact on the long term use of the land. Exploiting the opportunities offered by the potential of the agricultural land identified within the area (in conjunction with Department of Rural Development and Land Reform). Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality doesn't have Land Claims.

3.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

3.5.1. LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

South Africa's considerable and diverse natural resources open up a wide array of investment possibilities, from alternative energy to the fishing sector to eco-tourism. However, as a signatory to various international environmental agreements, South Africa is concerned to protect its natural resources and promote their sustainable use. In its environmental laws, South Africa attempts to strike a balance between encouraging investment and growth, and the need to protect the environment for present and future generations. There are a number of regulation, policies, acts and treaties that are meant at the protection, preservation and conservation of our natural resources. Below is the summary of the legislative framework of the state.

The Constitution of South Africa, Act 106 of 1996, section 24 of the Constitution provides that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that:

- Prevent pollution and ecological degradation;
- Promote conservation; and
- Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

3.5.2. THE NATIONAL WATER ACT, ACT NO. 36 OF 1998 [NWA]

The National Water Act, No. 36 of 1998 ('the National Water Act') recognizes that water is a natural resource that belongs to all people. The National Water Act regulates the manner in which persons obtain the right to use water and provides for just and equitable utilization of water resources. Sustainability and equity are

identified as central guiding principles in the protection, use and management of water resources.

These guiding principles recognize:

- The basic human needs of present and future generations;
- The need to protect water resources;
- The need to share some water resources with other countries; and
- The need to promote social and economic development through the use of water.

3.5.3. THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT, 1998 (ACT NO. 107 OF 1998) [NEMA]

The National Environmental Management Act, No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA) came into operation in January 1999. It is the flagship environmental statute of South Africa. NEMA's primary purpose is to provide for co-operative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on all matters affecting the environment. NEMA also establishes procedures and institutions that will promote public participation in environmental management. Chapter 1 of NEMA stipulates Environmental management must place people and their needs at the forefront of its concern, and serve their physical, psychological, developmental, cultural and social interests equitably.

It also advocates that development must be socially, environmentally and economically sustainable. The principles enshrined in NEMA guide the interpretation, administration and implementation of the Act and all other laws concerned with the protection or management of the environment in South Africa. These principles serve as a framework within which environmental management must take place. They include, amongst others, sustainable development and the 'polluter pays' principle.

3.5.4. NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT: WASTE ACT 2008

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, No. 59 of 2008 ('Waste Act') was enacted to reform the law regulating waste management and to govern waste management activities. The Waste Act has repealed and replaced those sections

of the Environment Conservation Act that dealt with the prevention of littering and waste management. The Act creates a general duty in respect of waste management obliging holders of waste to minimize waste, recycle and dispose of waste in an environmentally sound manner. Holders must also prevent any employees from contravening the Waste Act. Section 18 introduces 'extended producer responsibility'. The Minister may identify a product, in terms of which extended responsibility applies, identify measures that must be taken and by whom. The Minister may specify how to implement such extended responsibility and any financial arrangements that must be made.

3.5.5. NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT: BIODIVERSITY ACT

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, No. 10 of 2004 provides for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, the protection of threatened and protected species and ecosystems, the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources and the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising out of the bio-prospecting of those resources.

3.5.6. NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT: AIR QUALITY ACT, 2004 (ACT NO. 39 OF 2004) [NEMAQA]

On the 1st of April 2010 the National Environmental Management Act: Air Quality Act, 2004, Act no. 39 of 2004 (NEMAQA) came into full effect and the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 (Act No. 45 of 1965) (APPA) was repealed. The Air Quality Act regulates air quality in order to protect the environment. It provides reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development. The Act further provides for national norms and standards regulating air quality monitoring, management and control by all spheres of government. It also provides for specific air quality measures.

3.5.7. THE POLLUTER PAYS PRINCIPLE (PPP)

The 'polluter pays' principle provides that the cost of remedying pollution,

environmental degradation and consequent adverse health effects and of preventing, controlling or minimizing further pollution, environmental damage or adverse health effects must be paid for by those responsible for harming the environment'. NEMA imposes a duty of care on every person who causes, has caused or may cause significant pollution or degradation of the environment to take reasonable measures to prevent the pollution or degradation of the environment from occurring, continuing or reoccurring.

3.5.8. BIOPHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT, CLIMATE, RAINFALL AND TOPOLOGY

Location: The local municipality (LM) was established following the amalgamation of the Mookgophong and Modimolle Local Municipalities after the 2016 local government elections. The LM is bordered by Bela- Bela Municipality in the South-west, Mogalakwena Municipality in the north, Capricorn District Municipality in the north and north-east and the Sekhukhune District Municipality in the south and south-east. The Municipality is Approximately 10 366 km² in extent or 23% of the district's total area with a population of approximately 107 500 people (at the time of the 2016 Census), thus comprising 20.2% of the district population. The Municipality is strategically located, with the N1 National Highway passing through it. The N1 highway connects the Municipality with Pretoria and Gauteng in the south passing through the Municipality's major towns of Modimolle and Mookgophong to link with Polokwane and Zimbabwean border to the north.

Climate: The climate in the area is usually mild, and generally warm and temperate. Precipitation is the lowest in July, with an average of 4 mm. With an average of 116 mm, the most precipitation falls in January. Between the driest and wettest months, the difference in precipitation is 112 mm. During the year, the average temperatures vary by 11.5 °C.

Rainfall: The municipality normally receives about 535mm to 630mm of rain per year, with most rainfall occurring during summer. It receives the lowest rainfall (0mm) in June and the highest (108mm) in January.

Temperature: The monthly distribution of average daily maximum temperatures shows that the average midday temperatures range from 19.7°C degrees Celsius in June to 28.6°C degrees Celsius in January. January is the hottest month of the year. June has the lowest average temperature of the year. It is 11.5 °C. The region is the coldest during July when the mercury drops to 2.5°C on average during the night.

3.5.9. GEOMORPHOLOGY AND BIODIVERSITY (GEOLOGY AND SOILS)

The area has significant amounts of basalt and granite. Arenite and Mudstone are also quite prevalent. Rhyolite, Dolerite, Dolomite, Shale, Sedimentary and Gabbro are also found. The Geology is underlined by Sand stone and Lava deposits of Letaba Formation. Letaba Formation marks the upper boundary of the Karoo Sequence. The formation consists of intercalated volcanic flows and sand stone units of Jurassic Age (190 – 136 Ma old). The quaternary and younger sandy horizons overlying the sand stone are of the mixed origin and consist of soils from fluvial (river borne) and Aeolian (wind – blown) origin.

A substantial amount of minerals is found in clusters in the whole Waterberg district and there is also a cluster situated within Modimolle-Mookgophong area. Areas with mineral resources are indicted as most of these mineral zones are located in the southern and eastern parts of the municipal area. Minerals in the municipal area primarily include Fluor, Manganese, Coal, Limestone and fluvial Clay. The listed minerals have number of open cast mines that are abandoned; with few mines across that are producing raw material for brick making, raw materials for ceramics and producing raw materials for spa beauty products.

3.5.10. TOPOGRAPHY AND HYDROLOGY

The large Springbok Flats in the Waterberg Mountains are formed by “Rooibergfelsiet” and “Granophyre”, which are fined in texture but resistant against erosion dominates the topography of and surrounding area of the municipality. Areas containing untransformed natural vegetation, high diversity or habitat complexity, Red List organisms or systems vital to sustaining ecological functions are considered sensitive. In contrast, any transformed area that has no importance for the functioning of ecosystems is considered to have low sensitivity. This ecological assessment identifies those parts of the study area that have high conservation value or contain threatened organisms and containing unique biodiversity.

Biodiversity hotspots and conservation priorities in the study area should be preserved before transformation leads to the loss of the entire area. Modimolle - Mookgophong LM as the hub of the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve by UNESCO and is the first region in the northern part of South Africa to be named as such. The presence of the Biosphere Reserve in the study area provides an opportunity to promote biodiversity conservation at the same time as advancing eco-tourism in the study area. The scenic splendour of the Waterberg is associated with high diversity and relatively high levels of biological uniqueness. At the same time, the

Waterberg area within which the Biosphere Reserve is situated is an important and valuable water catchment area in the study area. The conservation of this part of the landscape therefore serves multiple purposes and can provide ecological benefits to an array of landscapes outside the Biosphere Reserve area. Woodlands of thicket and bushland covers the municipal area abundantly with islands of grasslands that sustain wildlife.

In Modimolle-Mookgophong municipality there are significant drainage areas these include the 24 Milk-Rivier Rivers in Vaalwater Area, the Nyl River is one of the upper reaches of the Mogalakwena River which feeds one of the most important wetland systems in the Limpopo Province. The Nylsvley Wetland is a RAMSAR site and contains unique biodiversity and ecosystem processes. The entire catchment of Nylsvley is within the south-eastern part of the study area, originating within parts of the Waterberg. There are some small tributaries of the Olifants River draining the southeastern part of the study area. Perennial and non-perennial rivers and streams represent a number of ecological processes including groundwater dynamics, hydrological processes, nutrient cycling and wildlife dispersal. Wetlands, rivers, streams and aquifers hydrological systems are protected under the National Water Act. These hydrological systems are also an important and variable habitat for a variety of organisms. The systems provide a connecting network through the landscape that provides a unique feature for linking dispersed patches of natural habitat, especially in landscapes that have undergone high levels of transformation.

3.5.11. VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

The indigenous flora of Modimolle-Mookgophong municipal area consists of the Waterberg Mixed Mountain Bushveld on the north and north – western side. The vegetation includes the tree layer, which is characterized by *Faureasaligna*, common *Acacia caffra*, *Burkea Africana*, *Terminiasericea* and *Peltophorum africanum* on the deep sandy areas, with *Kirkia acuminata* *Combretum apiculatum*.

The shrub layer is moderately developed and individuals of *Grewia flavescens*, *Ochna pulchra*, *Euclea crispa*, *Rhus zeyheri* and *Tapiphyllum parvifolium* are commonly found. The grass layer is moderate to well developed and grasses such as *Elionurus muticus*, *Loudetia simplex*, *Panicum maximum*, *Digitaria ariantha* and *Urelytrum agropyroides* are the conspicuous species the area is also characterized by the Mixed Bushveld and Clay Thorn Bushveld.

3.5.12. ANIMAL CLASSIFICATION

The indigenous fauna of Modimolle-Mookgophong municipal area consists of Red List vertebrates (mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians) that could occur in the study area are listed. Those vertebrate species with a geographical distribution that includes the study area are discussed further. There are 43 mammal species of conservation concern that occur in the study area. Thirteen of these species are threatened with extinction and are on the Red List (classified as CR, EN or VU). Seven of these species are only found in protected areas, game reserves or in private breeding programmes. These are the Tsessebe, Black Rhino, Roan Antelope, Sable Antelope, Cheetah, African Wild Dog and Lion.

There are six mammal species on the Red List that have a restricted distribution in the study area and which survive independently of conservation efforts, i.e. are dependent on maintenance of natural habitat outside of protected areas. These are the Short-eared Trident Bat, Botswana Longeared Bat, Peak-saddle Horseshoe Bat, Juliana's Golden Mole, the Giant Rat and the Pangolin. There are 21 threatened bird species (CR, EN or VU) that are found in the study area. They are found in a variety of habitats, although some patterns are evident. Large rivers, streams and wetlands provide important habitat for a number of species. Cliffs and mountainous areas are important for many species, including a number of vulture species. Woodlands and savanna vegetation provide foraging habitat for many of the species found in the area. There is one frog species of conservation concern, the Giant Bullfrog, previously recorded in the study area. There are two Vulnerable and one Near-threatened reptile species that have a distribution that includes the study area. The Near Threatened species occurs only peripherally in the study area. The other two species are the Crocodile and the African Rock Python.

A summary of existing information available in the Waterberg District for threatened Species and Species of Special Concern:

- **Plants:** Species information was obtained from SANBI, including from database searches and literature sources (EMF, 2010b). Sixty-four plant species of special concern are found within the Waterberg District. Twenty-two of the 64 species are threatened. Three are Critically Endangered, namely: *Euphorbia clivicola*, *Gasteria disticha* and *Orbea elegans* (potentially extinct). Three are Endangered, including *Brachystelma gerrardii*, *Delosperma macellum* and *Encephalartos eugene-maraisii*. Sixteen species are Vulnerable, namely *Brachycorythis conica*, *Ceropegia stentiae*, *Corchorus psammophilus*, *Cucumis humifructus*, *Cullen holubii*, *Cyphostemma hardyi*, *Elytrophorus globularis*, *Eulophia coddii*, *Jamesbrittenia bergae*, *Ledebouria atrobrunnea*, *Marsilea farinosa* subsp. *arrecta*, *Oryza longistaminata*, *Prunus africana* and *Sartidia jucunda*. Of the 64 species, 43 are not threatened nationally, but are of local concern. These species are listed as

Near Threatened (12), Critically Rare (1), Rare (16) or Declining (14) (EMF, 2010b).

- **Mammals:** Forty-five mammal species of special concern inhabit the Waterberg District. A total of 15 species are listed as Critically Endangered, Endangered or Vulnerable. Those afforded protection in protected areas, game reserves or in private breeding programmes include the Endangered tsessebe (*Damaliscus lunatus*), the Endangered black rhino (*Diceros bicornis*), the Vulnerable roan antelope (*Hippotragus equinus*), the Vulnerable sable antelope (*Hippotragus niger*), the Vulnerable cheetah (*Acinonyx jubatus*), the Endangered African wild dog (*Lycaon pictus*), the Vulnerable elephant (*Loxodonta africana*), the Vulnerable hippopotamus (*Hippopotamus amphibious*) and the Vulnerable lion (*Panthera leo*). The remaining species have a restricted distribution range and are not afforded such protection, namely the Critically Endangered short-eared trident bat (*Clootis percivali*), the Vulnerable botswana long-eared bat (*Laephotis botswanae*), the Vulnerable peak-saddle horseshoe bat (*Rhinolophus blasii*), the Vulnerable Juliana's golden mole (*Amblysomus julianae*), the Vulnerable giant rat (*Cricetomys gambianus*) and the Vulnerable pangolin (*Manis temminckii*) (EMF, 2010b).

- **Reptiles:** The Vulnerable Nile crocodile (*Crocodylus niloticus*) and Vulnerable African rock python (*Python sebae natalensis*), and the Near Threatened Muller's velvet gecko (*Homopholis mulleri*), are distributed within the Waterberg District (EMF, 2010b). The Kalahari purple-glossed snake (*Amblyodipsas ventrimaculata*) was recorded near Vaalwater, and occurs nowhere else in South Africa (River Health Programme, 2006).

- **Birds:** Three Important Bird Areas (IBAs) of South Africa lie within the Waterberg Ecosystem; Rivers, Floodplains and the Northern Turf Thornveld (also see Waterberg District Bioregional Plan – January 2016 14 Section 2.2). As a result, bird diversity is high, with 21 bird species of special concern that are classified as Critically Endangered, Endangered or Vulnerable. The variety of ecosystems within the Waterberg District provides habitat for these birds, ranging from rivers, wetlands and mountainous areas, to savannas, forests and grasslands. The Critically Endangered Cape parrot (*Poicephalus robustus*) inhabits forest and is endemic to South Africa. The bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*) is also Critically Endangered and inhabits lowland swamps and wetlands. Some of the species classified as Endangered include the Cape vulture (*Gyps coprotheres*), white

backed vulture (*Gyps africanus*), saddle-billed stork (*Ephippiorhynchus senegalensis*) and Pel's fishing owl (*Scotopelia peli*). Vulnerable species include, for example, the blue crane (*Anthropoides paradiseus*), African finfoot (*Podica senegalensis*), African grass Owl (*Tyto capensis*), bateleur (*Terathopius ecaudatus*), kori bustard (*Ardeotis kori*) and the martial eagle (*Polemaetus bellicosus*) (EMF, 2010b; EMF, 2010c).

- **Amphibian:** The Giant bullfrog (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*) is Near Threatened and relies on temporary wetlands and dams in the Waterberg District (EMF, 2010b).

3.6. SPATIAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

In Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipal Area the Waterberg Spatial Development Framework (WDM SDF) and Waterberg Environmental Management Framework (WDM EMF) identified functional zones, which consists of a range of features that clearly distinguishes it from the other zones and include the following:

- **URBAN ZONE:** typical urban activities dominate to the exclusion of other activities. The focus is around Belabela Town and includes the activities and land uses in Townships with components of denser residential areas and denser informality.
- **RURAL ZONE:** has some elements of the urban zone such as urban sprawl but differs to the extent that it includes very clearly defined agricultural activities in the form of subsistence farming or stock farming. The rural zone also consists of a large number of small settlements of varying density. These settlements are not functionally linked and exist largely independent of each other.
- **AGRICULTURAL ZONE:** has two (2) major zones
 - I. **Crop farming zone** which describes the areas with high potential for intensive agricultural activities. These areas have occupied most of the land in the Belabela municipal area.
 - II. **Ranching zone** is dominated by low intensity cattle and game ranching activities. This zone covers major parts of the municipal area and very often co-exists of overlaps with conservation activities.

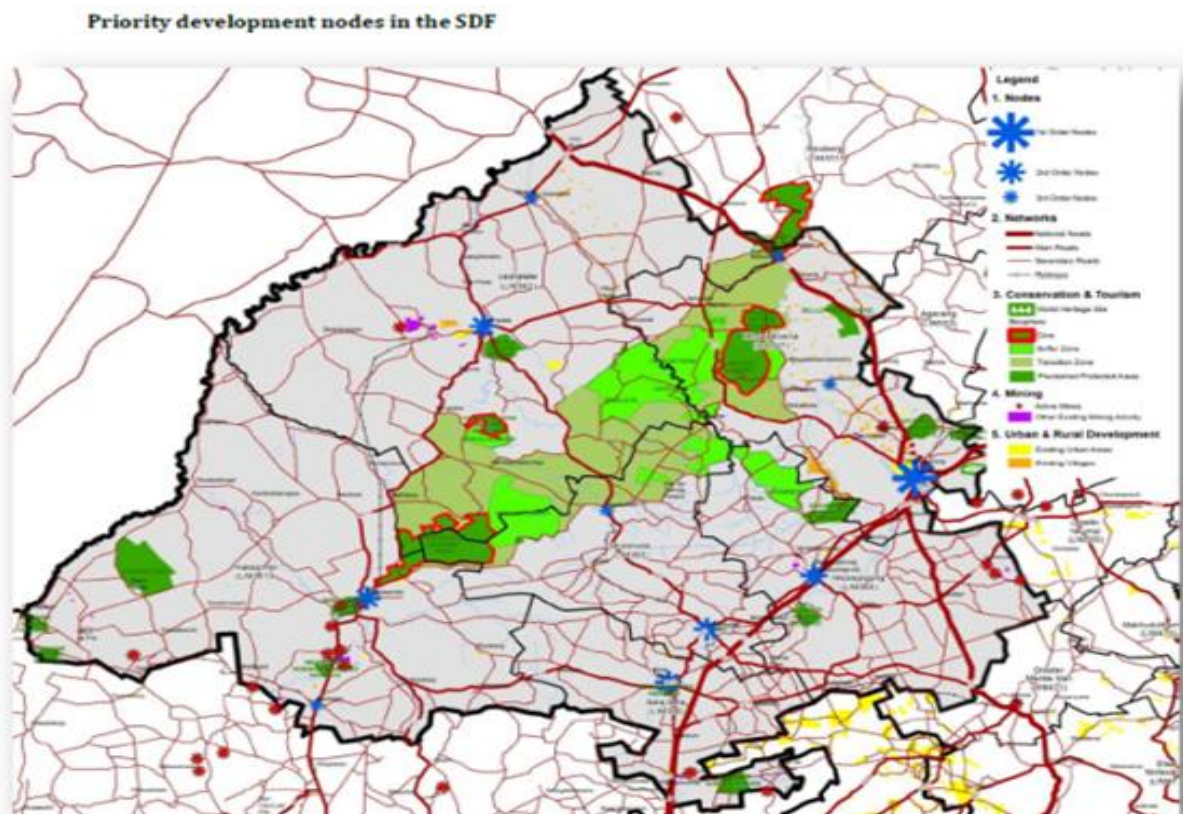
3.6.1. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT WITHIN MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

Conservation Zones-The area is exclusively used for conservation orientated activities to the exclusion of most other activities. There are a substantial number of proclaimed conservation areas in the municipal area as well as a direct link into the Waterberg Biosphere.

New EMF

The conservation map of MMLM, showing the priority development nodes for the Spatial Development Initiative (SDF) is presented in Figure 4 below.

Figure 4: MMLM Conservation Map



Modimolle-Mookgophong municipal area is dominated by environmental friendly areas that protects, conserve and preserve our natural resources in farm areas, nature reserves, game farms, lodges and resorts. Development is unfriendly to the

environment; especially in developed areas such as town, township, industries/industrial areas and mining areas. In these specified areas there is extreme land pollution, water pollution and air pollution of the environment due to unsustainable development. Although a large extent of the municipal area is degraded to a level where conservation as primary activity is not possible, it does not imply that serious attention should be paid to conservation and development practises that can mitigate existing damage to the environment. RSA Constitution and other acts provides for sustainable environment legislations and policies that can be implemented and enforced further, in order to achieve sustainable development.

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality is affected by soil erosion and veld fires, especially in the agricultural land areas. Land use practices such as deforestation, overgrazing, agricultural conventional cultivation practices and removal of vegetation cover can exacerbate these occurrences. Grazing land is more affected than cropping land due to shortage of grazing land, farmers are overstocking the land and it results to overgrazing which expose the soil to erosion by wind during winter and by water during rainy seasons. Uncontrolled veld fires also contribute to soil erosion on grazing land. Most of the activities mentioned above result in the loss of Biodiversity, which also result in extinction of certain indigenous species.

Conservation Areas

From a biodiversity management and conservation planning perspective, protected areas are key for meeting a number of objectives, including conservation targets for protecting representative portions of vegetation and habitats, linking landscapes, providing economic benefits, ensuring a continued supply of ecosystem goods and services and providing refugia for threatened organisms. The Convention on Biodiversity constitutes that an important stock of natural, cultural and social capital, yielding flows of economically valuable goods and services that benefit society, secure livelihoods, and contribute to the achievement of Millennium Development Goals in protected areas are the key to buffering unpredictable impacts of impending climate change.

Sustainable Development

Sustainable development is required to ensure the integration of social, economic and environmental factors in decision-making so that development serves present and future generations. Furthermore, sustainable development requires that a risk-averse and cautious approach be applied to decision-making.

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has a number of Nature Conservation Areas and Nature Reserves. While Modimolle-Mookgophong is at an advantageous position in terms of the environment since there are no heavy industries; but soil degradation and erosion is evidently increasing in farming zones. It is paramount that the Municipality ensures and prioritize environmental protection, guarding against its available environmental natural resources through formation of partnerships with its Environmental and Social Partners such as NGOs / CBOs, mainly for continual protection of sensitive environments such as wetland areas in the Nyl River Floodplain that presently are adequately protected in line with the requirements of the National Environment Management Act.

Eco-tourism development initiatives

The municipality is well-known for its scenic lodges and game farms. Apart from game farms and lodges, the areas hold vast opportunities in terms of all forms of tourism due to the undisturbed natural environment as well as its proximity to other cross boundary tourist destinations such as Bela-Bela, Modimolle and Mookgophong. Tourism within the Municipality plays a very important role in terms of local economic development with a variety of linkages to the surrounding areas. Modimolle -Mookgophong as a Tourism Destination occupies a strategic position from the main markets of the country by being at the entrance of the Province from the South. The visibility of Modimolle Mountain from the N1 north contributes to the curious tourists to visit the area. Regarded as the gateway to the Waterberg, the area is particularly known for its variety of outdoor recreation options, ranging from horse safaris, hiking and nature trails, to luxury hunting safaris. Bird watching at the internationally famous Nylsvlei Nature Reserve, where up to 200 species are easily spotted in the course of the day, also attracts many visitors to the area. The pleasant climate with hot summers and moderate winters makes Modimolle a year round holiday destination, only one and a half hours' drive from Johannesburg on the N1 to Zimbabwe. The road from Bela-Bela to Modimolle along the R101

route offers both an alternative to the toll road and exceptional cross boundary natural beauty and scenery.

Tourism is the major source of income for the people living within the **Waterberg Biosphere Reserve**. However, people also practice cattle ranching, crop production and are increasingly switching over to game farming for eco-tourism benefit. The biosphere reserve concept is considered to be important for helping to find a balance between the pressures of the tourist industry, the need to generate direct benefits to the local communities and the conservation of the natural assets. A number of nature reserves, resorts, game farms, and lodges are located within the municipality, headlined by the Nylsvley Nature Reserve, a designated Ramsar site, and a part of the Marakele National Park. Biodiversity of the Municipality comprises of large and small wild animals, and a diverse faunal assemblage, which are a significant leisure tourism attraction for the Municipality. Bird watching at the internationally famous Nylsvley Nature Reserve, where up to 200 species are easily spotted in the course of the day, also attracts many visitors to the area. The area is particularly known for its variety of outdoor recreation options, ranging from horse safaris, hiking and nature trails, to luxury hunting safaris. As such the Municipality is well-known for its scenic lodges and game farms and includes tourism nodes such as the Vaalwater area. The ecotourism and leisure tourism potential of the Municipality is even greater.

This is significant as tourism within the municipality plays a very important role in terms of local economic development with a variety of linkages to the surrounding areas. Modimolle-Mookgophong as a Tourism Destination occupies a strategic position from the main markets of the country by being located in the southern part of the Limpopo Province along the N1 corridor. As such the municipality is regarded as the gateway to the Waterberg. There are a substantial number of proclaimed nature reserves in the municipal area. The consequences for urban, rural and mining activities are very clear. The Municipality is home to Nylsvlei nature reserve with the RAMSAR status as well as the Nylsvlei bird sanctuary. The municipality has been graced by the well-known and tourism attraction natural feature which is the Modimolle Mountain-Cultural/heritage. Mabatlane/Vaalwater is regarded as the economic Hub of the world acclaimed Waterberg Biosphere Reserve with the UNESCO status.

Heritage development and preservation

Modimolle and Mookgophong enjoy easy access from the main national arteries, the N1 and R101 site. The first white settlers arrived in Waterberg in 1808 and the first naturalist a Swede appeared just before the mid 19th century. Around the mid-19th century, a group of Afrikaner travellers set out from Cape Town in search of Jerusalem. Arriving in Waterberg, they mis-estimated their distance and thought they had reached Egypt. After battles between Dutch settlers and tribesmen, the races co-existed until around 1900. The Dutch brought further cattle grazing, multiplying the impacts of indigenous tribes. By the beginning of the 20th century, there were an estimated 200 western inhabitants in the Waterberg, and grassland loss began to have a severe impact upon native wildlife populations. Historic sites, in and around Modimolle include the J.G Strijdom House and Museum where the former statesman lived for twenty years and which has been declared a national monument, as well as places related to the Anglo Boer War concentration camp established here in 1901. Historic churches include the Reformed church in Calvin Street, designed by Gerhard Moerdijk and built in 1929 and next to it, the oldest church building in Limpopo dating back to 1889, which has also been declared a national monument.

Train enthusiasts will enjoy the original locomotive used on the line between Pretoria and Modimolle after the line was completed in 1898, which now has pride of the place at the railway station. A ride on the luxury colonial train, the Nylsvlei Express to the nearby Boekenhout station also makes for a fun outing. Donkerpoort Dam, some 11 km northwest of the town on the R517 is a popular fishing spot for carp, bream and black bass. It is also a very popular spot. The Municipality does not have any multi-cultural event to attract tourist. Majority of tourists who account for bed nights are from Gauteng with sizeable foreign tourists. Modimolle enjoys mostly tourists who visit for Holidays rather than daily tours. The area forms part of the leisure cluster in the Mabatlane area and Modimolle town with special interest group in the north at the Nylsvlei. The main opportunities that require further redevelopment and advancement in the tourism industry that can best benefit Modimolle and its community can be summarized as follows: -

- **Institutional Development** – Develop a comprehensive tourism strategy, encourage establishments to apply and maintain star grading, develop accurate intelligence data, develop a BEE strategy, develop policy on second economy and establish properly constituted forums for both the hawkers and flea-market.

- **New Product Development** - Explore medical tourism, further develop sport / adventure tourism, train station, increase local content in product, manufacture products for sport industry and diversify product offering.
- **Skills Development** – train the emerging tourism entrepreneurs.

The popular cluster of tourism attractions in Modimolle-Mookgophong municipality, as identified in the Waterberg Tourism Development Strategy is the **leisure and adventure tourism cluster**. The initiative by Gauteng Provincial Government and Limpopo Provincial Government (i.e. The Dinokeng Integrated Tourism Initiative) which is planned to stimulate flows of new visitors into the southern tip of Limpopo province with various secondary cross boundary tourism benefits for Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality and Bela-Bela Municipality. There are plans for huge new reserves which will offer big five, as well as a circuit of cultural centers. The supply of accommodation for tourism is splendid with **game farm lodges, golf eco-estates, hunting facilities, holiday resorts, guest houses and camping sites**. The most significant tourism attractions of the area can be classified as well established and well developed already in the municipal area with identified domestic and international markets that has great potential of sustainable economic growth with upmarket established game farms and golf eco-estates.

Land use conversions within the municipal area in alignment with tourism development became very popular to domestic and international developers, as farmers were selling their conventional agricultural farms to developers for development of game farms, game lodges, hunting facilities, game breeding facilities and golf eco-estates properties for business, leisure and adventure with tourism driven accommodation. Popular game lodges and golf eco-estates clusters in the municipal area are Lapalala Wilderness Game Farm, Fumani Game Lodge, Melk-Rivier Game Farms and Lodges, Alma Game Farms and Lodges; paired with a range of high-end established golf eco-estate clusters such as Euphoria Golf Eco-Estate, Koro-Creek Golf Estate and many more.

Agriculture development imperatives

Even though agricultural related activities have decreased in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipal area due to increased game farming activities, the following crops are still produced in large quantities for local consumption and exports: Maize, Cotton, Tobacco, Sunflower with fruit orchard farms includes

grapes, strawberries, citrus, peaches and cash vegetable crops in various farms. Vegetables crops and various, are also planted in various farms. Stock farming is practiced as well throughout the municipality such as; Cattle, Goat, Horse and Poultry.

The agricultural sector in Bela-Bela should also be considered as economically important particularly because it provides rural residents work as farm labor. However, this sector in many cases is characterized by very poor working conditions and wages are notoriously low with the existence of underemployment due to foreign migrant workers from northern African countries that come to South Africa for better economic and social opportunities. The foreign migrant workers reside in farms in search for shelter, food and work. Nevertheless, in economic terms the agricultural sector has extensive backward and forward linkages, thereby contributing tremendously towards the overall development and existence of other sectors. This relates mainly to the inputs received from various sources to the agricultural sector (backward linkages) as well as output from the agricultural sector to various other sectors and users (forward linkages).

Mining development

The contribution of the mining sector towards economic development of Modimolle-Mookgophong is not highly significant. In the past decade, there were several new applications for mining around the Nylsvlei area, some of those applications were approved by DMR after number of granted bioprospecting rights. The type of mining that was approved in the municipal area was mainly quarrying of milestone for brick manufacture industries and also quarrying of clay soils for manufacturing of ceramics and beauty spa products. A long existing limestone, sandstone mine and clay in the Modimolle-Mookgophong municipal area is the Nylstene Mine that quarry brick making materials for centuries. This mine is located on the northern parts of the municipal area.

Parks and Open Space Management

Open spaces are recognized as a critical and fundamental element to building of **climate resilient communities and sense of place in human settlements**. Open spaces with both social and ecological functions are perceived as infrastructure equal to roads, water, electricity and the other traditional municipal services that have long taken precedence over open spaces. The critical

relationship between people and ecological systems creates sustainability and climate resilient settlements with dependence on ecosystem services. The National Development Plan (NDP 2015) requires authorities to scale-up and provide open space ecological infrastructure on par with typical municipal infrastructure funded under Municipal Infrastructure Grant Fund (MIG), to ensure balanced ecological and urban systems.

Open spaces must be granted a **status of urban land use** equal to any other 'typical' urban function. The term 'Open Space' covers green space consisting of any vegetated land or landform, water or geological feature in an urban area and most cities also include civic space consisting of squares, market places and other paved or hard landscaped areas with a dominant civic function. Natural open spaces include ridges, watercourses, wetlands, dams, conservation areas, play parks, as well as sports and recreation and utility areas including sports areas, city entrances, streets, traffic islands, squares, boulevards, parking areas, infrastructure servitudes, cemeteries and many more. It is important that urban functions, facilities and infrastructure be designed in consideration of **open spaces and reserves of biodiversity** for creation of a diverse planning, ecological resilience and climate resiliency of **open space network**.

Natural open spaces will be considered separate from parks areas but be integrated with a social function. although the two may intersect and overlap, the absolute size provision must be calculated separately, for an example social spaces must ideally be provided at a ratio of 2ha (or more) per 1000 people in addition to the natural open spaces that is required for ecological functioning, even if the two spaces overlap. The design process needs to consider both the impact of infrastructure development on biodiversity, and the potential benefits or services that are derived from a functioning ecosystem through careful planning or formulation of (SDFs) Spatial Development Frameworks that will prohibit encroachment on sensitive natural environmental features such as wetlands, rivers, floodplains and many more.

Open Spaces may be utilized as **environmental stormwater management infrastructure** in order to maintain and optimize the existing linear infrastructure services, in order to avoid progressive degradation of built infrastructure and ecological ecosystems. By implication, urban design through SDFs must provide adequate buffer areas as well as design and management strategies for open spaces that accommodates urban impacts and that provides protection of natural ecosystems from urban effluents by-products discharge (such as untreated waste water effluent, hazardous oil substances and many more) from entering sensitive environments as such as rivers, wetlands, floodplains. Open space has long been recognized as a key building block of inclusive communities by functioning as a

place that purifies water, harbors plant and animal life, cleans the air, and regulates weather and climate. This life-giving function of open space is the most threatened by urban development and spatial fragmentation. Open space **key benefits that provides** quality of life ranging from social, health, environmental and economic benefits.

Social Benefits: Open spaces provide a range of social benefits that are increasingly being recognized as important drivers in shaping future communities. Open space connects and builds strong communities by providing opportunities for local people to interact for a range of leisure, cultural and other activities leading to enhanced social cohesion and inclusion.

Health Benefits: Access to open spaces encourages physical activity that in turn enhances physical and mental well-being, enhances children's development and well-being, reduces the risk of chronic diseases such as diabetes, obesity and many more.

Environmental Benefits: Natural open spaces provide protection of biodiversity, cultural heritage value; and regulates climatic extremes, land pollution, stormwater management and air pollution control.

Economic Benefits: Recreation activities, food garden services, tourism attraction points and many significant sources of employment for communities.

3.6.2. AIR QUALITY AND CLIMATE CHANGE

State of Air: Air Quality -The Waterberg-Bojanala Air Priority Area was declared on 15 June 2012 by the minister of Environmental affairs in response to the potential risk to ambient air quality due to the proposed expansion plans. The presence of the Lephalale Coal Fields and the Medupi Power Station affects all 5 Local Municipalities of the Waterberg District as all the municipalities are impacted by air pollution sources due to cross boundary pollution that also impact Bojanala District.

The sources of pollution include power generation, mining, industrial emissions, domestic fuel burning, vehicle emissions, agricultural activities, biomass burning, waste treatment & disposal, and dust from various sources. The Air Quality Management Plan for Waterberg DM (June 2009) provided an emissions inventory with the main air pollution sources listed above, however the WDM AQMP plan is outdated as it was developed in 2009 – the plan will be redeveloped by the district when funding is available from environmental sector departments. The 2009

AQMP listed the following sources as more eminent in the Waterberg region and the air pollutants sources are increasingly growing due to increasing industrial activities in municipalities over the years. The Air Quality Management Plan for Waterberg DM (June 2009) provided an emissions inventory with the main air pollution sources related to mining identified as:

- Power generation, with Matimba Power Station the main source of SO₂ emissions in Lephalale municipality and with the new Medupi Power Station just west of Lephalale also anticipated to becoming a significant source of sulphur dioxide emissions, and with power generation the main contributing source of the Waterberg's SO₂ and NO₂ emissions, contributing 95% and 93% respectively; and
- Mining in general, with this relating to fugitive dust emissions from mining activities. Additional air quality issues come from: • Industrial emissions, mainly from small boiler sources and brickworks, contributing to PM₁₀ and SO₂ concentrations;
- Domestic fuel burning, mainly coal and paraffin burning in informal settlements;
- Vehicle emissions from petrol and diesel vehicles along the major roads and the N1 highway with this, however, not considered to be a significant pollution source in this district;
- Agricultural activities which, although not quantified, are considered to be a considerable source of ambient particulate concentrations;
- Biomass burning, with this also not quantified as this is irregular and seasonal, but adds to the ambient particulate concentration load;
- Waste treatment and disposal, and with incineration occurring on a small scale in hospitals; and
- Wind erosion of exposed areas, also not quantified, and allied to agricultural activities where fields are bare for certain periods between crops.

There is a desperate need for clarity on what the government's long term plans are in respect to the further development of the Waterberg Mining Zones with Coal Fields, especially in relation to electricity generation and potential liquid effluent from coal processing.

3.6.3. DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES AND THREATS

Potential significant negative changes in the air quality of the district and the Lephalale area in particular, is likely to occur in future due to the development of the Lephalale Coal Field (LCF). Current air pollution sources of concern are:

- Dust from mines, quarries, brickworks, spoil/overburden heaps and heavy vehicles using gravel roads.
- The burning of solid waste at waste disposal sites, informal waste dumps and especially on farms and at tourism facilities in natural areas.
- Smoke from vehicles especially heavy vehicles that drive through towns. Relevant to the WDM is the operation of the existing Matimba Power Station, and the construction and operation of the Medupi Power Station near Lephalale. Emissions of SO₂, NO_x and particulate matter from Medupi will add to the current baseline concentrations on a regional scale.

In addition, with an increase in emissions associated with the development and the inevitable urbanization, i.e. motor vehicles and domestic fuel burning, there is a potential for exceedances of health-based ambient air quality standards to occur and a risk to human and environmental health. The greatest potential threat to ambient air quality exists in the WDM through the planned expansion of energy-based projects and coal mining in the district and in Botswana. The planned development poses a threat to human and environmental health in the region and it poses challenges for air quality management in the region. The greatest potential threat to ambient air quality exists in the WDM through the planned expansion of energy-based projects and coal mining in the district and in Botswana. The planned development poses a threat to human and environmental health in the region and it poses challenges for air quality management in the region.

Climate Change Impact

Local municipalities will need to plan and implement more for climate change impacts. The burden on municipalities will grow because of the expected increases in natural disasters, water scarcity and disease, and reduced agricultural production and food security. Some municipalities will be more sensitive to these changes than others, and many municipalities may lack the adaptive capacity because of existing developmental challenges, such as low incomes, weak institutions, low levels of education and primary health care, lack of markets and infrastructure and already-degraded ecosystems.

Rural communities and local municipalities will need to find appropriate and efficient ways of developing resilience to climate change through adaptation measures. These measures will need to be supported at a systemic level, including through intergovernmental finance mechanisms. It can be a result of both anthropogenic factors and natural factors, because human beings burn fossil fuels to heat their homes, run their cars, produce electricity, and manufacture all sorts of products, this adds more greenhouse gases to the atmosphere. By increasing

the amount of these gases, the warming capability of the natural greenhouse effect has been enhanced. It is the human-induced enhanced greenhouse effect that causes environmental concern, because it has the potential to warm the planet at a rate that has never been experienced in human history.

Environmental Challenges

The Waterberg District faces various environmental challenges, including natural vegetation degradation, overgrazing, biodiversity loss, conflicting land uses, and development pressures. Mining activities, particularly excavation and stockpiling, significantly impact water quality and habitats, while illegal sand mining further degrades riverine systems and wetlands. Unemployment, poverty, and limited access to resources exacerbate these issues, particularly for rural communities.

The potential risks that can be highlighted includes:

- Increasing rate Deforestation and Veld fires
- Bush Encroachment
- Urban Sprawl and increasing informality
- Increase in Alien Invasive Plants invasion
- Soil Erosion and Wind Erosion
- Poor Management of landfill sites and illegal dumping in green open spaces
- Inadequate sanitation systems (sewer spillages into the Natural Environment)
- Pollution of Water, Land and Air
- Land Degradation and Overgrazing
- Animal and Plant Poaching
- Chemical spills and/ or other hazardous accidents
- Poor Management: Air Quality, Water Quality and Land Quality due to lack of budget and functional governance systems

Table 3.9: Climate Risks, Vulnerabilities and Adaptation

Key Indicator	Climate Change Projections	Risks, Vulnerabilities And Adaptation Options	Risk Potential
WATER VULNERABILITY			

<p>ANNUAL RAINFALL AND PROJECTED CHANGES</p>	<p>Projections from a suite of CMIP5 climate models show slight reductions in MAP into the immediate future of the 2030s, generally of around 10-20 mm, but up to 20-30 mm in the southeast which translates into reductions of 2-4%</p>	<p>A projected reduction of 10-20 mm per annum, equivalent to a 2-4% reduction in annual rainfall may not appear very significant, but can translate into a ~ streamflow reduction of 4-10%. However, this projected reduction has to be seen in light of simultaneous increases in temperature and with that increases in crop irrigation water demand, a reduction in soil water content and in dam storage. All sectors are considered to be “losers”. Adaptations will be primarily in the conversion of reduced annual rainfalls to reduced annual runoffs which imply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Judicious water usage and general water savings, • household tanks being installed, 	<p>Low</p>
---	--	---	-------------------



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • more frequent water rationing • leakage control • more drought resistant crop varieties being grown • careful irrigation scheduling and • more judicious environmental flow controls. 	
STREAMFLOW CHANGES	Major % flow decreases of up to 40% appear in the north of the Waterberg DM in dry years while equally major % increases are shown in the Limpopo valley in wet years.	<p>The main risks in the WDM are the generally low streamflow, their episodic nature and the high CVs which, in combination, pose a major threat to local surface water resources and their management, and in particular in low flow years.</p> <p>The major adaptations will involve water suppliers at all levels of government, including more frequent water rationing.</p>	High
SEASONAL RAINFALL CHANGES	Relatively benign projected changes in seasonal rainfall, the most important impacts are likely to be the anticipated slight	At risk are both dryland farmers and irrigators growing summer crops planted in spring – dryland farmers because reductions in rainfall in association	Low

	<p>increase and concentration of summer rainfall, with summer being the main rain season, but probably more important the decrease in autumn rainfall with a dry winter awaiting the DM.</p>	<p>with higher temperatures imply reduced soil water availability and more plant stress days and irrigators because of an increase in the number of irrigation applications necessary for optimum growth. The adaptations listed under projected changes in MAP apply equally to projected seasonal changes, only more severely,</p>	
<p>FROST OCCURRENCE</p>	<p>Frost is a major constraint in the Waterberg District Municipality, especially in the central highlands, with up to 30- 40 frost days there, but with very few frost occurrences along the northwest and northeast borders of the DM. Severe frost, when minima reach below -2°C, are experienced much less frequently. Projected to the</p>	<p>Where to grow cold sensitive vegetable and fruit varieties will be an important adaptation to make agriculturally. However, incidences of more pests and crop/animal diseases may increase. Night-time energy demand will decrease, as will the reduced use of firewood resources among poorer rural communities.</p>	<p>High</p>



	intermediate future of the 2050s the projections are for significant reductions in frost occurrences throughout, including the central highlands, with severe frosts a very rare occurrence		
POTENTIAL EVAPORATION	Climate projections with CMIP5 GCMs from the present into the immediate future of the 2030s show increases from ~ 95 to ~ 110 mm over most of the DM this translating to a percentage increase of around 5.5% spells, especially in the northwest, the northeast and the south of the DM. Additionally, the longer the duration the more the entire DM	All water resource suppliers will have reduced water available from the increased evaporation. In most of the DM evaporation losses from dams are already very high. The water sector cannot really apply adaptation measures to counter enhanced evaporation apply adaptation measures to their practices and their management choices. It also places pressure on farmers.	Medium
GROUNDWATER RECHARGE	Virtually no change projected across DM in dry years.	Projected changes are important because recharge feeds base	

	<p>Mean annual recharge into the immediate future, shows decreases from 4-10 mm, with the central highlands displaying gains, while this pattern is strengthened for 1:10 year high groundwater recharge, with two thirds of the WDM displaying marked decreases of > 10 mm except again in the central highlands where equally significant increases are shown</p>	<p>flows, especially dry season flows in areas where streams are episodic or ephemeral. In this regard the exceptionally high CVs of recharge compared with those of streamflow show a further amplification that any change in climate may have on an “invisible” underground resource such as groundwater. Adaptation to projected changes in groundwater recharge is complex as it is an invisible resource which responds slowly and where repercussions may be felt only years after recharge events, be they positive or negative, take place. Planners will therefore have to be exceptionally vigilant when any groundwater related development takes place</p>	<p>Low</p>
<p>AGRICULTURE VULNERABILITY</p>			



<p>CHANGE IN OVERALL ABOVE-GROUND PRIMARY PRODUCTION (ROSENZWEIG EQUATION)</p>	<p>Into the immediate future of the 2030s with relatively little change in rainfall together with increases in temperatures, an enhancement of primary production, and thus agricultural potential of climatically robust crops, is projected. This ranges from a ratio of 1.2, i.e. 20%, to 1.4, i.e. 40%</p>	<p>Potentially positive impact; Potentially higher crop, and grazing yields. Based on seasonal growth characteristics of natural vegetation. For robust crops outlook is good; for heat sensitive crops cannot necessarily presume high productivity</p>	<p>Medium</p>
<p>IRRIGATION WATER REQUIREMENTS</p>	<p>Mean annual net irrigation water requirements vary across the DM. Into the future of the 20130s, net irrigation water requirements increase, varying from 6-7.5% in a median year and 4-7% in a dry year.</p>	<p>Risks in the irrigation sector is the availability of water (river run-off or from dams), irrigation return flows and leachates likely to be of poorer quality, pressure by the irrigation sector for more licenses to irrigate. Risks in the irrigation sector is the availability of water (river run-off or from dams), irrigation return flows and leachates likely to be of poorer quality, pressure by</p>	<p>Low</p>

		the irrigation sector for more licenses to irrigate	
ACCUMULATED HEAT UNITS	The projected increases in heat units have major on-farm repercussions ranging from changes in growth rates, shortening of heat unit dependent phenological periods for certain crops, increases in the number of life cycles per year of certain pests and diseases, or changes in yields. Into the intermediate future – a ratio changes of 1.28-1.32, or 28-32% is projected. It is especially the cooler central highlands which display the well-known higher sensitivity of temperature parameters to climate change in cooler areas	The increase in heat units holds a positive response for farmers due to increased growth rates, shortening of heat unit dependent phenological periods and the potential increase in the number of life cycles a year. Livestock and game farmers will have to adapt to reduced production and conception rates by the introduction of new and more heat resilient breeds	Medium

<p>POTENTIAL EVAPORATION</p>	<p>Soils dry out rapidly after rain resulting in crop stress, and irrigation water demands within the DM are already high. On the other hand, where and if soils are moist, crops grow very quickly. The significant additional potential evaporative losses under projected future climates do not bode well for irrigators, be they abstracting water from dams or from run-of-river.</p>	<p>Under historical climatic conditions (1950-1999) mean annual A-pan equivalent potential evaporation ranges from 1 700 mm in the central highlands to around 2 100 mm in the Limpopo valley. Climate projections with CMIP5 GCMs from the present into the immediate future of the 2030s show increases from 95 to 110 mm over most of the DM, this translating to a percentage increase of around 5.5%. Mulching and minimum tillage will reduce soil water evaporation</p>	<p>Medium</p>
<p>MAIZE YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES</p>	<p>Dryland maize projections of yields into the future are mostly positive, albeit small at 0.2 t to maximally 1.2 t/ha, with distribution of the gains very patchy. Irrigated maize: in a hotter future in an area</p>	<p>An example of changes in optimum plant dates of maize, derived using the ACRU maize yield model which also captures rainfall adequacy and soil moisture stress at critical growth stages, shows for the Waterberg DM that a</p>	<p>Medium</p>

	<p>already hot the prognosis is for decreases in irrigated yields, mostly of the order of 0.40 t, but in places the projected decreases are up to 1.40 t/ha.</p>	<p>future optimum planting date into the intermediate future is 1-2 weeks later than at present. Critical for farmers to know the optimum conditions (planting and flowering dates) for different varieties of maize. Need to supply sufficient water for irrigation, and need to correct the hybrid or variety of maize to cope with changing conditions; need accurate weather forecasts</p>	
<p>SORGHUM YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES</p>	<p>Into the intermediate future (2050s) the projected sorghum yield changes are relatively small, with ~ 85% of the DM showing gains of 0.25 to 1.50 t/ha/season and only ~ 15% of the region projected to losing yields in future, mostly < 0.5 t/ha, with this translating into both gains and</p>	<p>Generally increased yields and good for food security; better chance of adapting though still important to breed more resident grain sorghum varieties</p>	<p>High</p>

	losses of up to 40%.		
SOYBEANS YIELDS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Dryland soybean yield in the intermediate future are projected to increase, this increase ranging from 0.5 t in the west to > 1.4 t/ha in the central highlands, with these increases equivalent to percentage increases of 25 to more than 65%	Generally increased yields. In SA the adaptation strategies of conservation practices and crop rotation seem to not only counter the impact of climate change, but to positively impact on profitability, with soybeans seen as a very viable alternative to maize when the latter's price decreases	High
CITRUS FRUITS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	Navel oranges: suitable in central highlands – less suitable in future; Valencia oranges: less suitable out of central highlands and more suitable in central highlands of WDM; Grapefruit: gains in the central highlands and south which are currently not very suitable for grapefruit;	Depends on location – changes in suitability between different areas of the WDM which may mean that the crops move to different areas to adapt; different cultivars; will probably require irrigation. Shade nets and additional transport costs and energy costs re: storage temperatures	Low

	Lemons: projected suitability gains in the northeast of WDM		
CATTLE AND HEAT STRESS	The 100 to 200 favourable days/year in the WDM w.r.t. heat stress in cattle are reduced by between 60 and 85 days into intermediate future of the 2050s, while the 80-110 days with “middle-of-the-range” critical conditions under historical conditions also display “middle-of-the-range” uncertainties in the future showing range of projected changes from 35 more critical days in the cool central highlands to 25 fewer critical days in the hot Limpopo valley. The 10-60 very stressful emergency days of the present, however, are	Decreased reproductive performance; decreased milk production. Very disconcerting findings with significant reduction in favourable days and significant more critical days in terms of heat stress; also highly stressful to game animals. Careful mitigation measures must be instituted: feeding management, increased water availability; spacing around cows when drinking; housing and facility adjustments; shade availability etc. High levels of management response required	High

	projected to increase by an additional 25 to 85 days		
GOATS AND HEAT STRESS	Into the warmer future of the 2050s, the favourable days for goats decreases by 65 to 80 days per annum. Projected to have an additional 50 to 70 moderate stress days for goats. Severe stress days for goats are only experienced on between 1 and 20 days per year, but with an additional 2 to 20 severe stress days by the 2050s	Reduction of growth performance, reproductive performance, milk production and animal health and welfare. Effects are likely to be lower in goats' vs larger ruminants due to small body weight, well developed water retention in the kidney and lower metabolic rates – mohair goats may be more susceptible. Indigenous goats are most adaptive. Some measures such as supplementary feeding, grazing management etc. to be considered	High
BIODIVERSITY AND ENVIRONMENT			
ALIEN INVASIVE PLANTS	Alien Invasive plants (AIPs) have potentially drastic impacts on local and catchment water resources. Currently, AIPs are estimated to	Likely to increase growth and vigor; widespread infestations in the south, generally transpire more than natural vegetation and reduce streamflow;	High

	<p>reduce yields of dams and rivers by about 1.4% of RSA's MAR; however, AIPs are frequently located in riparian areas so under warmer future conditions and year-round growth, MAR could be reduced considerably more than at present; and they replace prime agricultural land, especially in floodplain areas</p>	<p>can be fire danger, positive side can be source of firewood. Riverine infestations in particular need to be eradicated as soon as possible by the Working for Water initiative as well as by individuals, as infestations could well become denser with a warmer climate and they would then likely impact even more negatively on water resources than at present.</p>	
<p>LANDSCAPE DEGRADATION</p>	<p>Degraded thicket and bushland in the north; degraded forest and woodland elsewhere but especially in the south-east of WDM.</p>	<p>All sectors are losers, particularly agricultural sector and water sector. Depends on commitment to sound management: grazing management, conservation farming and physical rehabilitation of eroded areas.</p>	<p>High</p>

<p>GROUNDWATER RECHARGE</p>	<p>In the WDM risks associated with reductions in groundwater recharge are highest in the south where the repercussions of projected reductions in groundwater recharge may also have severe ecological implications.</p>	<p>Adaptation to projected changes in groundwater recharge is complex as it is an invisible resource which responds slowly and where repercussions may be felt only years after recharge events, be they positive or negative, take place. Planners will therefore have to be exceptionally vigilant when any groundwater related development takes place.</p>	<p>High</p>
<p align="center">HUMAN HEALTH VULNERABILITIES</p>			
<p>HUMAN DISCOMFORT AND PROJECTED CHANGES</p>	<p>Most significant variables are humidity, wind, and temperature. Comfortable Days: Historical data: < 40 in Limpopo Valley and 140 in central highlands. Projected to the 2050s to reduce comfortable days < 10 in Limpopo Valley and to 80 days in the central highlands</p>	<p>Increased air conditioning costs, more heat-related emergencies, re-look at working hours, uncomfortable living conditions. Thermal discomfort on more days per year; implies more discomfort for livestock; humans can adapt using technology, but implications for costs, working hours, tourism industry, housing</p>	<p>High</p>



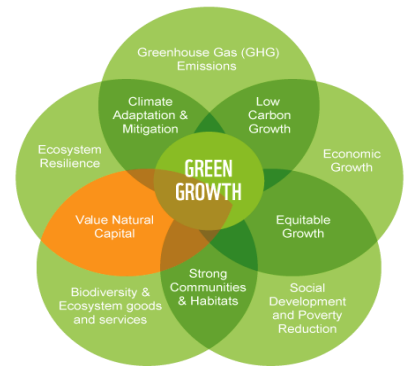
	<p>Historic data: Uncomfortable Days: 40-60 days in Limpopo valley and about 10 days in central highlands.</p> <p>Projected to increase from 40-100 uncomfortable days in Limpopo valley and from 10-20 days in central highlands</p>	needs and insulation requirements; possible health implications through higher disease risk	
INCREASED MALNUTRITION AND HUNGER AS A RESULT OF FOOD INSECURITY	<p>Climate Change will affect food systems, compromising food availability, access and utilisation, leading to food insecurity (particularly of subsistence farmers).</p>	This is a real risk. A consolidated effort is required to address this critical vulnerability.	High
DISASTER MANAGEMENT, INFRASTRUCTURE AND HUMAN SETTLEMENT			
EXTREME INFRASTRUCTURE DESIGN RE. RAINFALL EVENTS AND PROJECTED CHANGES	<p>From the 1 to the 2 to the 3-day accumulated design streamflow, there is a visible increase in magnitudes of flow. Between the 10 and the 50 year</p>	Flood damage, higher insurance; difficult to model extreme events; Should not relax standards or reduce design criteria.	Medium

	return periods there is, similarly, an expected increase in design flood.		
EXTREME INFRASTRUCTURE DESIGN RE. STREAMFLOW AND PROJECTED CHANGES	<p>From the 1 to 2 to the 3-day accumulated design streamflow there is a visible increase in magnitudes of flow; Between the 10 and the 50 year return periods; there is, similarly, an expected increase in design floods. The larger river systems such as Mokolo flowing northwards, display markedly higher magnitudes of rare flooding. Conventional wisdom would suggest more extreme flooding in climate changed future, but projections do not always display this; the 1:50 year projections display more areas of</p>	<p>“Extreme” streamflow with high recurrence intervals impact a wide range sectors from water planners at all levels, disaster risk management, all facets of agriculture, the insurance, mining and tourism industries, the transport sector, human settlements. Indications are that the northeast and parts of the central highlands are particularly vulnerable to large floods, and special care should be taken by engineers when designing hydraulic structures there. Extreme events cannot be isolated with great confidence. Care should therefore be taken for DM engineers not to assume a reduction in design streamflow events, and should</p>	Medium

	higher extremes than the 1:10 year	NOT to relax present design criteria based on long term historical data. Considerably more research is required into design hydrology under climate change, using outputs from more GCMs	
INCREASE IN FIRE DANGER RATINGS	Historical climatic conditions show favourable conditions in WDM; i.e. small number of days 2.5-10% of days (10-40 days/year) of fire risk, countered by the mean number of very likely fire days in range of 250-350 days per year due to frequent dry atmospheric conditions and high biomass.	Historical climatic conditions show favourable conditions in WDM; i.e. small number of days 2.5-10% of days (10-40 days/year) of fire risk, countered by the mean number of very likely fire days in range of 250-350 days per year due to frequent dry atmospheric conditions and high biomass. The projected increase in the number of very likely days in the fire danger rating index does not bode well into the future, the southwestern interior and the northwestern highlands being the most vulnerable. The many different impacts	High

		<p>of fire are tabulated for a wide range of sectors. The population at large and especially disaster management agencies will need to be very vigilant to the dangers of fire under projected future climatic conditions.</p>	
--	--	--	--

Figure ???



3.6.3 GOOD GOVERNANCE (GREEN MUNICIPALITY FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT)

The Municipality participative actively in the Provincial Green Municipality Competition, the LEDET GMC. Green Municipality Competition (GMC) is an environmental program with a broad focus on environmental management, sustainable development and service delivery. GMC has six / 6 core elements which are **waste management, energy efficiency and conservation, biodiversity management and conservation, landscaping and beautification, public participation and community empowerment, leadership and institutional arrangement.** The Municipality has performed consistently in the all competition and held the following positions at a district

level. Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality mostly held position two / 2 to three / 3 between the years of 2009 to 2019.

Promotion of green developments by developing and implementing environmental municipal sector plans:

- (i) encourage and enhance of green economy.
- (ii) creates environmental considerations in infrastructural developments.
- (iii) develop tools of community environmental education, environmental awareness and environmental campaigns.
- (iv) improve environmental skills development in communities.
- (v) shape and create full-structured municipal environmental unit / section in municipal organisational structures.
- (vi) conceptualise a strong foundation for environmental compliance for the preservation of Bela-Bela environment for future generations within
- (vii) creates attraction for green funding and increase green funding.

3.6.4 INTEGRATION PHASE WITH STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES

The prioritization of environmental skills development and structural building of municipal environmental units / sections for green future building, predominantly is to strengthen the environmental function in municipal administration in order to ensure successful performance of the municipality across all environmental mandate (based on environmental legislation). As well, to also identify gaps that exist within municipalities and make recommendations on improvements. Interventions across all environment sectors will be detailed in each municipal administrative environmental thematic area.

3.6.5. AVAILABILITY OF MUNICIPAL ENVIRONMENTAL ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

Table 3.10: Number of Personnel available per environmental thematic area

LM	AVAILABILITY OF ENVIRONMENTAL	NUMBER OF TOP PERSONNEL	MANAGERS	AQ O/AQ M	WO/WM	B & C	EI A	CC	E O	ENV C&E	EMI
----	-------------------------------	-------------------------	----------	-----------	-------	-------	------	----	-----	---------	-----

STRUCTURE											
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Yes Social Services Structure	5	2	X	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	1

Waste Management / Biodiversity & Conservation (Parks Management) / Eias (Spatial Planning Section)

In Modimolle-Mookgophong local municipality, environmental prioritisation of municipal functions is mainly within the office of Social Services. The main focus is vigorous on **Waste Management Section and Parks Management Section**. Both existing municipal environmental functions are currently managed by the Waste Management Officer (WMO) of the municipality, as a responsible head/manager of both sections, directly reporting to the director of Social Services Section. The WMO (Waste Management Officer) lead daily municipal environmental service delivery administration of Modimolle-Mookgophong local municipality. Furthermore, the WMO lead development of environmental planning tools, establishment of environmental forum and committee structures, facilitation of environmental programmes and projects reporting directly to the Social Services Director / Manager.

EIAs are Environmental Impact Assessment Reports that are received and processed by the office of Waste Management Section in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality, however by design this environmental administrative task requires an Environmental Unit or at least an Environmental Officer.

Air Quality Management and Climate Change / Environmental Compliance and Enforcement / Environmental Officer

The municipality does not have personnel for all the above environmental thematic competences. The municipality has number of quarries in operation within its jurisdiction and also the municipality is part of the UNESCO renowned Waterberg Biosphere Reserve. The district supports the municipality with all the above services at a very limited basis due to shortage of personnel at the district, however

the municipality is encouraged to consider **to appoint a professional Environmental Officer** that will be able to conduct the environmental work daily.

Municipal Environmental Functions and Personnel

The local municipality have a Social Services structure that has a partly related environmental function of both Waste Management and Parks Management Services. In waste management, the local municipal management prioritize waste function as it is deemed as an essential municipal service by local government. Waste Management is directly funded by Treasury through MIG (Municipal Infrastructure Grant) financial systems. The local municipality has no appointed Environmental Officer / Environmental Manager that can deal with environmental pollution caused by waste pollution. The institute rely on the WMO (Waste Management Officer) that is currently assume duties as a Waste Manager in implementation of environmental function with a very limited content in diverse environment sectors of environmental management and environmental planning. The WMO (Waste Management Officer) is only employed by the municipality to be responsible for waste management function only. The local municipality has no appointed Environmental Officer / Environmental Manager that can deal with environmental pollution caused by waste pollution. The Waste Manager is supported by 2/two assistant waste officer under his management, due to vacant positions in the management structure of Waste Management Section.

Specifically, in Parks Management there is an appointed Parks Manager. The Parks Manager works together with the WMO/Waste Manager as the Waste Manager leads environmental related issues in the municipality. The Parks Manager is supported by 2/two Parks Officer. The section is responsible for green open space management function in local municipalities. The green open space management function aligns perfectly with biodiversity and conservation; however, the existing structure is not well engineered to suite an overall biodiversity and conservation functions in local municipalities. DFFE and LEDET also supports the municipality with implementation processes of developing environmental planning tools, establishing forums, conducting programmes and funding projects in both Waste Management and Biodiversity Management.

3.6.6. RECOMMENDATION

Thence the national Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) and the provincial Department of Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism (LEDET) recommends re-engineering of Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality Social Services structure, in order **to build an Environmental Unit** that will serve the municipal environmental function properly. This approach of Social Services structural re-engineering will include all environment sectors and maximize new vital job opportunities within the local municipality. Young unemployed environmentalists and future young environmental professionals / graduates will be well accommodated in municipal environmental professional jobs, in the now and in the future. However, in the meantime; the municipality is encouraged to consider **appointing a municipal Environmental Officer** that will be able to conduct daily professional environmental work.

Figure 5: Municipal Environmental Functions – Guided by Legal Protocol

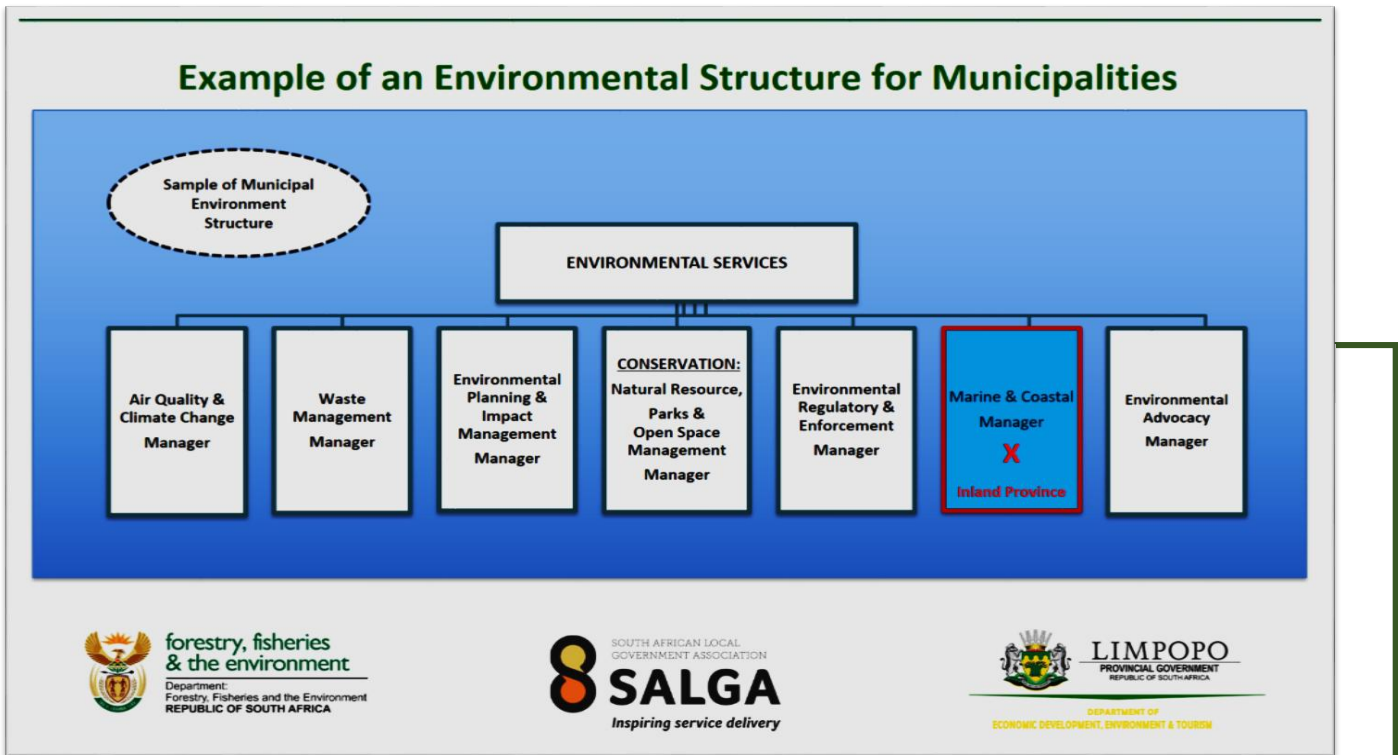


Table 3.11: Environmental Planning Tools, Forums, Programmes and Projects

PLANNING TOOLS	FORUMS	SECTOR PROGRAMS	ACTIVE PROJECTS
<p>*Modimolle-Mookgophong IWMP</p> <p>*Modimolle-Mookgophong Spatial Development Framework: SDF</p> <p>*Modimolle-Mookgophong Tourism Strategy</p>	<p>Waste Management:</p> <p>*Modimolle Mookgophong Landfill Site Audit Committee</p>	<p>*LEDET: Waste Cleaning Campaigns</p> <p>*LEDET: Environmental Campaigns</p>	<p>*MISA-COGTA & WDM-DDM: Waste Innovation Project – EPWP</p> <p>*DFFE & LEDET Greening Project: Tree Planting – EPWP</p> <p>*DFFE & LEDET Cleaning and Greening Project – EPWP</p> <p>* DFFE NRM: Natural Resources Management – EPWP</p> <p>* DFFE YCOP: Youth Community Outreach Project</p>



The National Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) and the Provincial Department of Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism (LEDET) supports the bela-bela local municipality in each financial year with human resources personnel that is based at district level. The environmental support is packaged with financial support that is allocated through environmental programs and projects that are implemented by the environmental sector departments in collaboration together with the Waterberg District Municipality (WDM). The national DFFE and provincial LEDET personnel innovatively plan further and create public partnership programs with other government sector stakeholders and private sector stakeholders that conduct and carry the mandate of environment; in environmental planning, environmental management, environmental programs and environmental project in order to support municipalities and communities with implementation of environmental activities holistically.

3.7. WASTE MANAGEMENT

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality is committed to provide an equitable, efficient and effective integrated waste management services within its jurisdiction. The municipality gives their assurance that waste facilities operated or used by the municipality will be permitted and operated according to the DWAF minimum requirements and that they will constantly strive for the best standards in waste management.

Municipality is committed to providing an equitable, efficient, and effective integrated waste management service within its jurisdictional area, which is sustainable and is in accordance with the internationally accepted waste hierarchy principle. Through this, the municipality will ensure that waste is minimized, recycled, re-used and treated in accordance with national statutory requirements and policy, and that appropriate mechanisms and technologies are in place for the environmentally acceptable and cost-effective collection, transport and disposal of waste. The municipality gives their assurance that waste facilities operated or used by the municipality will be permitted and operated according to the and that they will constantly strive for the best standards in waste management. The municipality currently has a number of illegal dumping sites because of the lack of resources to collect and dispose of waste efficiently.

The municipality provides waste collection from informal settlements to formal settlements within the jurisdiction and management of landfill sites. The municipality needs to develop Integrated Waste Management Plan.

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has three licensed landfill sites, one in Vaalwater, Phagameng and Mookgophong. Currently there is a need to relocate the

Phagameng and Vaalwater Land Fill Sites as they are in close proximity to the newly extensions. The legal status of all the land fill sites is being compromised due to insufficient operational funds to comply with the permits requirements. The District is currently considering the establishment of a regional landfill site to assist all the local municipalities with the district with waste disposal function. The municipality has identified a new Landfill site in Modimolle.

Table 3.12: Licencing of municipal land fill sites

Area	Licencing/Permit Status
Mookgophong land fill site	Licenced
New Modimolle land fill site	In progress
Old Modimolle Land fill site	Licenced (operating licence and closure permit)
Vaalwater land fill site	Licenced

Source: Mmlm 2025

3.7.1. MUNICIPAL LANDFILL SITES CHALLENGES

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces challenges in its municipal landfill sites, including issues with daily covering, dust suppression, waste disposal in cells, and lack of waste separation promotion. There are also concerns about the consumption of condemned or expired food items, disposal of medical/hazardous and electronic waste, and improper disposal of foreign objects into the sewer system. The following are some of the more notable challenges.

- No daily covering, no dust suppression, waste not disposed in cells, no promotion of waste separation;
- Consume condemned or expired food stuff that lead to food poisoning and death;
- Disposal of medical/hazardous and electronic waste in landfill sites; and
- No management of hygiene waste (uncontrolled disposable nappies).
- No way bridge, compacting, access control and security

3.7.2. CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES ON WASTE MANAGEMENT (RE-USE, RECYCLING AND REDUCE)

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces challenges and opportunities in waste management, particularly in reuse, recycling, and reduction. These challenges include infrastructure limitations, requiring investment in waste recycling support systems and promoting education. Opportunities lie in fostering collaboration between the municipality, educational institutions, and the private sector to enhance environmental awareness and implement recycling initiatives. Some of the notable challenges include:

- Separation of waste at the source – household and business areas
- Lack of equipment – baling machines, bulk bags, folk lifts
- Transportation of material to big cities by SMME's – costly
- Recycling and storage facilities – recyclers store material at their private residence
- Health and safety – lack of personal protective clothing
- Education and awareness
- Not sufficient budget

3.8. SWOT ANALYSIS IN SPATIAL PLANNING

A SWOT analysis of spatial planning in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality reveals both opportunities and challenges. The municipality's strengths include its potential for growth and the importance of private sector involvement. However, weaknesses such as capacity constraints and poor planning present hurdles. Threats like land invasions and the loss of investment opportunities require careful attention. Opportunities exist in upgrading basic infrastructure, timeously approving development applications, and implementing the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA). Table 3.13 shows a summarized SWOT on spatial planning for the Municipality.

Table 3.13: SWOT: SPATIAL RATIONALE

STRENGTH	WEAKNESSES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approved Human Resources Policies • Approved work skills plan • Establishment and settlement committee • Cascaded PMDS to all Municipal Officials • Municipal Network functional • The governance structure of the municipality is fully functional, i.e., council support, council committees, ward committee and stakeholder forums • Panel of attorneys in place • Training of employees in place • Life changing programmes for the community 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Poor work ethics • Inadequate office space • Insufficient budget allocation • Non-renewal of licenses (Microsoft license) • Outdated website and content information • No communication strategy and Media policy in place • Absence in media spaces
OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Availability of large pool of young and vibrant people for recruitment • Strong stakeholder relations and cooperative Governance • Biggest tourist destination in the Waterberg District Municipality • Political will and commitment of the political head 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resistant to change • Warrant of execution • Waterberg District has low number of people who've passed matric and in Higher Education Institutions (at 28% and 8% respectively) • Withdrawal of mandatory grant • Cyberbullying • Community protests

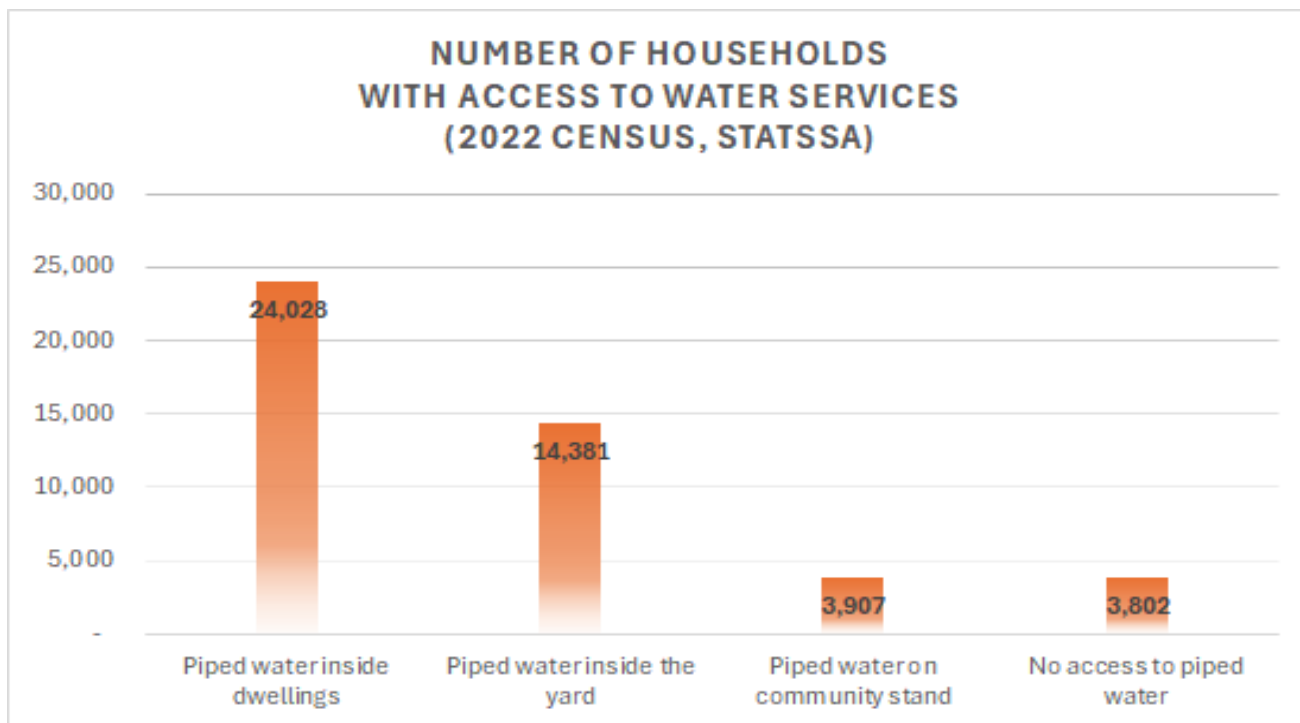
CHAPTER 4: KPA 2 BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY

The KPA (Key Performance Area) 2 Basic Service Delivery department of the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality focuses on ensuring the delivery of essential municipal services to residents. This includes services like water, sanitation, and electricity. The municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP) includes a section on KPA 2, outlining its strategic goals and plans for service delivery.

4.1 WATER SERVICES

The municipality is a water service authority and provider. Water is one of the scarcest resources in the country and Waterberg in general. The Hydrology of the area includes both the surface and groundwater features. Most households in the Municipality have access to water in terms of yard connections. All informal settlements receive water through communal taps and tankers. The municipality must consolidate and review water service development plans from previous municipalities. Furthermore the municipality has to develop its own water master plan. Km of Water Pipes in our Municipality is +/- 600km of both bulk and reticulation services.

Figure 6 : Access to Water per Household



Source: Stats SA 2022

4.1.1. SERVICE NORMS AND STANDARDS (WATER AND SANITATION)

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (MMLM) strives for excellence in water and sanitation services, ensuring safe drinking water and addressing waterborne diseases. While infrastructure is not the primary concern, water quality performance has been declining. The municipality aims to deliver basic services like water provisioning, with support from national and provincial governments.

Here's a more detailed look at the service norms and standards:

- Supply of water 24 Hrs
- Free basic water supply 10kl/M/H

- Draw water from at least 200m radius
- Blue Drop should be above 95%
- Ventilated improved pit toilet (VIP)
- Green Drop should be above 95%
- Sanitation

4.1.2. SOURCES OF WATER

The primary water sources for the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality are the following:

- Donkerpoort Dam (Category III)
- Frikkie Geysers Dam/Welgevonden Dam (Category I)
- Magalies Water
- Boreholes

4.1.3. WATER CATCHMENT AREAS

The water catchment points for the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality include the following:

- Donkerpoort Dam
- Frikkie Geysers Dam

Table 4.1: Number of Municipal Boreholes

Area	No of boreholes	Functionality of Boreholes
Modimolle	13	4
Mookgophong	21	14
Vaalwater	10	7
Alma	4	4
Roedtan	5	2
Total	52	31

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.2: Groundwater Availability

Groundwater Availability- No Boreholes in Modimolle-Mookgophong LM	Availability
Total no of boreholes	52
No of boreholes operating	31
No. of boreholes not operating	21
No of vandalised boreholes	02
No. of decommissioned boreholes	02
No. of dry boreholes	13
No. of boreholes that needs maintenance	04
No. of Boreholes that needs electrical connection	0

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.3: Blue Drop Audit Per Key Performance Area (KPA -2023)

WSA	Total I WT W	Critical WT W	KPA 1: Capacity Management	KPA 2: DWQ Risk management	KPA 3: Financial Management	KPA4: Technical Management	KPA 5: DWQ Compliance
Bela Bela LM	3	2	50.58%	37.36%	23.11%	21.99%	29.18%
Lephalale LM	2	0	74.40%	35.75%	55.92%	41.12%	47.15%
Modimolle Mookgophong LM	5	4	49.35%	12.47%	42.09%	28.00%	13.64%
Mogalakwena LM	1	0	71.20%	37.80%	51.45%	27.50%	29.90%
Thabazimbi LM	4	2	50.13%	30.27%	26.45%	18.59%	22.43%

Total	15	8
-------	----	---

Source: DWS 2025

- 3 of 5 WSAs have 8 critical water supply systems with Modimolle-Mookgophong having the highest number (4)
- All WSAs with critical water supply systems submitted their Blue Drop CAP and all commenced with the implementation except Thabazimbi LM

Table 4.4: Municipal Water Balance Information (No Drop)

Name of WSA	Water Supplied (KI/a)	Real Losses (KI/a)	Real Losses (%)	Non-Revenue Water (KI/a)	NRW (%)	l/c/d
Bela Bela LM	3 688 079	1 121 358	30.4%	1 880 087	51%	146
Mogalakwena LM	9 924 284	4 019 790	40.5%	5 135 774	51.7%	98
Modimolle Mookgophong LM	4,716,286	1,847,524	37.86%	1,816,752	38.8%	127
Lephalale LM	16 857 986	8 949 288	47.5%	12 604 631	74.8%	408
Thabazimbi LM	5 302 533	1 762 026	33.2%	2 202 533	41.5%	191
Averages			35,6%		50,42%	197

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.5: Water Demand vs Supply in the MMLM

Source (s)	Design (ML/day)	Actual Supply (ML/day)	Demand
Donkerpoort	10	2.0	
Magalies Water	6.2	5.3	
Modimolle Boreholes	2.96	1.06	

Source:Mmlm 2025

Welgevonden Dam (Frikkie Geyser)	5.0	2.5	
Nyl Wellfield (Boreholes)	3.2	2.0	
Mabatlane Boreholes	3.4	1.5	
Mabaleng Boreholes	1.0	1.0	
Roedtan Boreholes	1.0	0.5	

4.1.4. WATER CHALLENGES

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces significant water service delivery challenges. These challenges are exacerbated by factors like climate change, drought, and high water consumption. Some of the most notable challenges include the following:

- Ageing Infrastructure
- Inadequate ground water resources
- Inadequate ground water on Municipal land
- Inadequate bulk water supply
- High water loss
- Lack of water master plan
- Ugrading of Donkerpoort water treatment plants
- High water loss through leaking meters and busting pipelines
- Lack of skilled personnel at water treatment plants.
- Informal settlements uses pit latrine that poses health risk.
- Lack of tools, equipment, machinery and vehicles for operation and maintenance

4.2 SANITATION SERVICES

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality sanitation is about health, sanitation is far more than the construction of toilets-it is a process of improvements which must be accompanied by promotional activities as well as health and hygiene education. The aim is to encourage and assist people to improve their health and quality of life. The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has 498 Km of Waste Water Pipes.

Sanitation is about dignity. The availability of sanitation facilities does not only improve the dignity of people, but also promotes their health. Areas without proper sanitation systems give rise to water borne diseases like cholera, diarrhea, typhoid,

etc. It is therefore important that a municipality prioritises this service, particularly taking into account the backlog (rural sanitation) and the national target.

4.2.1. SERVICE NORMS AND STANDARDS (WATER AND SANITATION)

As indicated in section 4.1.1., The MMLM prioritizes infrastructure upgrades to ensure quality and uninterrupted water and sanitation services. Some of the norms and standards guiding the service include the following:

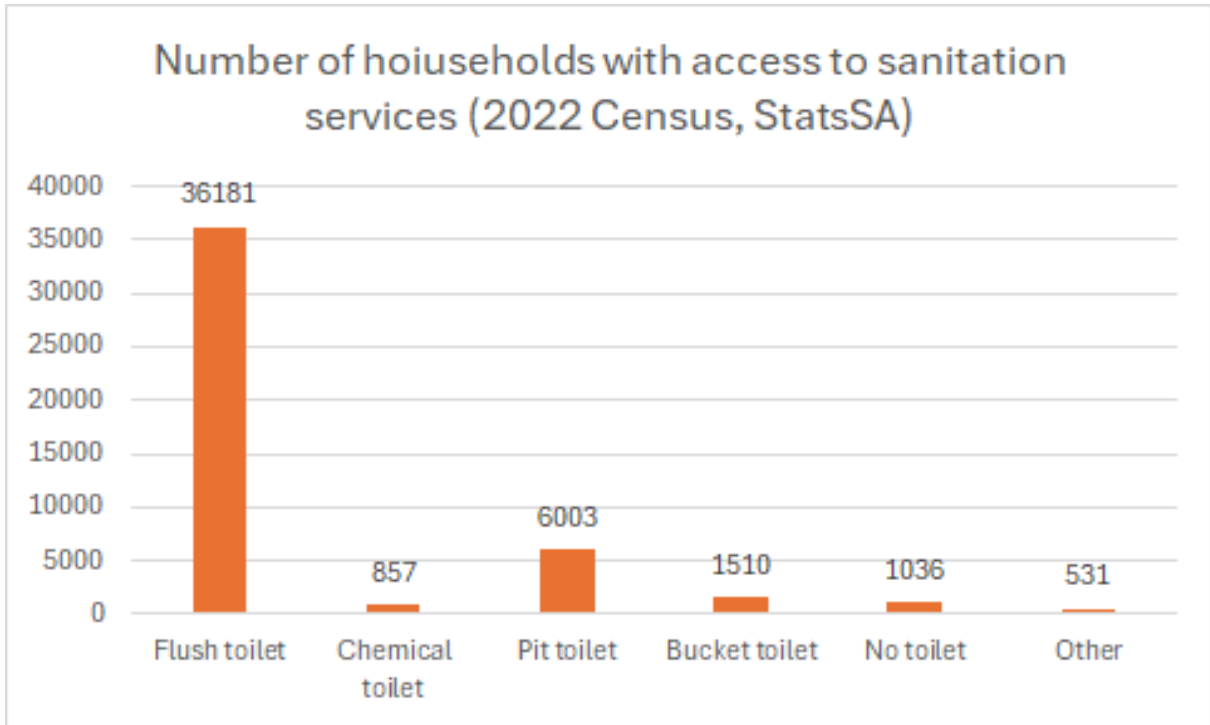
- Free basic water supply 10kl/M/H
- Draw water from at least 200m radius
- Blue Drop should be above 95%
- Ventilated improved pit toilet (VIP)
- Green Drop should be above 95%

Table 4.6: Sanitation and Treatment Plant

No	Area	Description
1.	Modimolle	1 Waste water Treatment Plant (Activated Sludge)
2.	Mookgophong	1 Waste water Treatment Plant (Activated Sludge)
3.	Vaalwater	1 Waste water Treatment Plant (Oxidation Ponds & Activated Sludge)
4.	Alma/Mabaleng	1 Waste water Treatment Plant (Activated Sludge)
5.	Farms	Septic Tanks
6.	Roedtan	1 Oxidation Ponds

Source:Mmlm 2025

Figure 7: Access to Sanitation per Household



Source: Stats SA 2022

4.2.2. GREEN DROP CERTIFICATION

The Department of Water Affairs initiated the waste water quality regulation. The objective of the programme is to ensure improvement of waste quality by means of compliance monitoring of all Water Services Authority (WSA). In an attempt to implement public confidence due to many negative reporting on water quality triggered the initiation of the incentive based regulation programme termed the Green Drop Certification. Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality was well prepared for the audit with representation from Finance, HR, Asset management, Call Centre, and Maintenance. The team was welcomed by Municipal Manager (telephonically as he was out of town) and had interactive session with Mayor and Technical Director after audits to discuss areas of concern. This management commitment bodes well for the future of wastewater management in the municipality.

The Regulator commends the municipality for positive evidence on staff, asset register, approved bylaws, and a number of capital projects to upgrade and refurbish the sewer network and treatment plants. This capital programme will serve to improve on the overall Green Drop score of 33% in 2021, which regressed from 48% in 2013. The Regulator is, however, very concerned that plants that have been upgraded, such as Vaalwater WWTW, still receive a Green Drop score of 27% and still lack operational and maintenance capacity. The new Modimolle plant is dysfunctional due to the inlet pumps not working (26% TSA score, see below). This presents a fatal gap in the theory that capital funds alone would raise performance and achieve compliance. The Municipal leadership is urged to ensure that competent technical skilled persons be put in place to operate and maintain assets and processes, as asset deterioration is inevitable without this critical enabler.

4.2.3. GREEN DROP AUDIT FINDINGS FOR MMLM

The Green Drop Certification Programme in South Africa assesses and monitors the performance of municipal wastewater management systems. Municipalities that achieve a Green Drop score of 90% or higher are awarded Green Drop status. This means that the municipality is meeting stringent requirements for wastewater management.

The Modimolle WWTW was inspected to verify the Green Drop audit findings

- One new pumpstation was in excellent condition with back-up generator
- Evidence of long-term sewer spillage to the surround environment due to vandalism of newly installed sewer pipeline and pumpstation
- Evidence of illegal discharge of industrial effluent by abattoirs in the area
- The treatment plant was in poor condition: redundant material lying around, grass not cut, screening around inlet works – no evidence of 1st order maintenance by the PCs or maintenance teams
- High incidents of theft and vandalism despite full-time security
- Screens were in fair condition, however, screenings were not measured and disposed on-site, inlet works were unkept, and grit removal was dysfunctional due to blockages
- The Orbell reactors was filled with sludge, as all aerators were dysfunctional

- The activated sludge reactor was functional, but colour and odour confirm poor operations - blockage in Orbell reactors
- The secondary clarifier was filled with sludge as the recycle pumps were dysfunctional - no sludge disposal taking place at present
- The new plant was not functional due to inlet pumps not working
- The existing flow meters were not working, and limited operational monitoring takes place
- Disinfection unit was not functional.

Table 4.7: Green Drop Compliance

Water Service Institution		Modimolle-Mookgophong LM
Water Service Provider		Modimolle-Mookgophong LM
Municipal Green Drop Score		VROOM Impression (Towards restoring functionality): 1. Industrial effluent pipeline 2. Inlet pumps 3. Aerators on Orbal reactor 4. Sludge recycle pumps 5. Cables for blowers 6. Disinfection VROOM Estimate: - R46,800,000
2021 Green Drop Score	33%↓	
2013 Green Drop Score	48%	
2011 Green Drop Score	38%	
2009 Green Drop Score	9%	

Table 4.8: Green Drop Audit Per Key Performance Area (KPA)-2022

WSA	WW TW Audited	Critical WW TW	KPA 1; Capacity Management	KPA 2: Environmental management	KPA 3: Financial Management	KPA4: Technical Management	KPA 5: Effluent Compliance
-----	---------------	----------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

Bela Bela LM	3	2	64,83%	54,87%	3,33%	11,93%	16,26%
Lephalale LM	3	2	46,03%	13,43%	39,33%	8,83%	21,37%
Modimolle Mookgophong LM	5	3	58,7%	17,28%	35,48%	30,0%	17,28%
Mogalakwena LM	3	3	41,27%	20,33%	36,2%	7,6%	37,53%
Thabazimbi LM	3	3	7,1%	1,67%	0,0%	6,43%	0,0%
Total	17	13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •All 5 WSAs submitted Green Drop Corrective Action Plans (GDCAP) for 13 critical wastewater systems. •All WSAs commenced implementation of KPA1 (registration of works, process controllers, maintenance teams and scientists in line with Regulation 3630 except Thabazimbi LM). •4 WSAs are loading effluent quality data consistently on IRIS (KPA 5) with exception of Thabazimbi LM, 				

Source: DWS 2025

4.2.4. SANITATION CHALLENGES

The Modimolle Mookgophong Local Municipality is currently grappling with severe issues related to sewer blockages, primarily caused by the improper disposal of foreign objects into the sewer system. The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (MMLM) faces challenges in providing consistent and reliable water and sanitation services, with significant infrastructure issues and operational constraints impacting service delivery.

- **Overflowing sewage in Modimolle (Lillian Ngoyi Street, Jay Naidoo Street, Paul Kruger Street, Limpopo & Joe Slovo), Ext 10 and Ext 9 Lekkerbreek**
- **Mookgophong (Ext 5) and Vaalwater (Ext 2).**

4.3 ENERGY AND ELECTRICITY ANALYSIS

4.3.1. ESKOM SERVICES

Both Eskom and the Municipality is a service provider of electricity in the municipality. Municipality has powers and functions for provision of electricity. The municipality offers a free basic service of 6 kiloliters of water and 50 kWh of electricity per 30-day period to indigent consumers

The municipality services the following areas

- Modimolle town area,
- Some farms and
- Townships

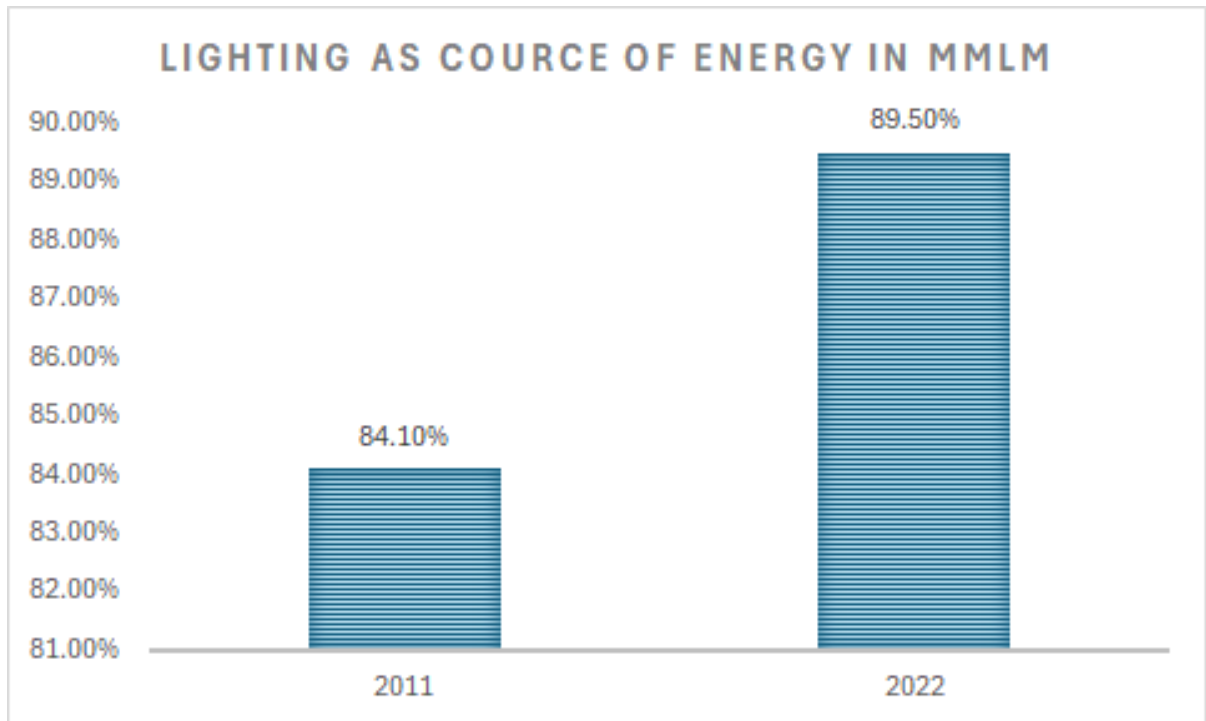
The table 4.9 below outlines the energy and electricity service areas of the Municipality..

Table 4.9: Electricity service supplied area

Ward	Location/Area	Electricity Supply (Municipality/Eskom)
1	Vaalwater	Municipality
2	Alma	Municipality
3	Vaalwater	Municipality
4	Mookgophong -Location	Eskom
5	Mookgophong Town and Farms	Municipality
6	Modimolle-Phagameng	Municipality
7	Modimolle-Phagameng	Municipality
8	Modimolle-Phagameng	Municipality
9	Mookgophong –Location	Eskom
10	Mookgophong –Location	Eskom
11	Modimolle-Phagameng and Town	Municipality
12	Modimolle-Town	Municipality
13	Modimolle-Phagameng	Municipality
14	Mookgophong –Location	Eskom

Source: Mmlm 2025

Figure 8: Types of Energy sources used by household



Source: Stats SA 2022

4.3.2. ELECTRICITY CHALLENGES

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces significant electricity challenges, including power outages. These challenges have led to disruptions in service delivery and inconvenience for residents, particularly in areas like Mookgophong and Vaalwater. Main challenges can be summarized as follows:

- Ageing infrastructure
- Illegal connections
- Excessive copper cables and transformers theft

4.4 WASTE MANAGEMENT

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has three licensed landfill sites, one in Vaalwater, Phagameng and Mookgophong. Currently there is a need to

relocate the Phagameng and Vaalwater Land Fill Sites as they are in close proximity to the newly extensions. The legal status of all the land fill sites is being compromised due to insufficient operational funds to comply with the permits requirements. The District is currently considering the establishment of a regional landfill site to assist all the local municipalities with the district with waste disposal function. The municipality has identified a new Landfill site in Modimolle.

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality is committed to provide an equitable, efficient and effective integrated waste management services within its jurisdiction. The municipality gives their assurance that waste facilities operated or used by the municipality will be permitted and operated according to the DWAF minimum requirements and that they will constantly strive for the best standards in waste management.

4.4.1. SERVICE NORMS AND STANDARDS ON WASTE MANAGEMENT

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality is legally obligated to provide waste management services, adhering to national and provincial norms and standards. This includes waste removal, storage, and disposal, ensuring access for all and affordability in line with their tariff policy. The municipality also aims for sustainable service delivery through effective management and separate financial statements.

The following is an outline of the norms and standards in waste management services at the municipality:

- Promote waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste - 25% of recyclables diverted from landfill sites for re-use, recycling or recovery
- Ensure the effective and efficient delivery of waste services - 95% of urban households have access to adequate levels of waste collection services.
- 80% of waste disposal sites have permits
- Grow the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy - 300 new jobs created in the waste sector
- 12 SMMEs and cooperatives participating in waste service delivery and recycling
- Ensure that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment - 25% of schools implementing waste awareness programmes

- Achieve integrated waste management planning – 100% of waste management facilities (Landfill site) required to report to SAWIS have waste quantification systems that report information to Waste Information System.
- Provide measures to remediate contaminated land - Assessment complete for 80% of sites reported to the contaminated land register
- Ensure sound budgeting and financial management for waste services - The municipality provides waste services and conducted full-cost accounting for waste services and have implemented cost reflective tariffs
- Establish effective compliance with and enforcement of the Waste Act - 50% increase in the number of successful enforcement actions against noncompliant activities.

4.4.2. Municipal Landfill Sites Challenges

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (MMLM) faces challenges in managing landfill sites, in addition to issues of service delivery such as water and sanitation. Some notable challenges include:

- No daily covering, no dust suppression, waste not disposed in cells, no promotion of waste separation;
- Consume condemned or expired food stuff that lead to food poisoning and death;
- Disposal of medical/hazardous and electronic waste in landfill sites; and
- No management of hygiene waste (uncontrolled disposable nappies).

4.4.3. RECOMENDATION OF THE DEPARTMENT OF FORESTRY, FISHERIES AND ENVIRONMENT

The following are recommendations of the national Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment (DFFE) on the waste management

- Waste minimization must be prioritised and construction of facilities that will implement waste minimisation should be prioritised;
- Implementation of waste minimisation will also alleviate poverty, create jobs and promote a green economy in Modimolle Mookgophong LM that is characterised of high unemployment rates; and
- Wetlands Rehabilitation and Waste Treatment Works Constructed Wetland Projects.

Cleansing Services

The Municipality renders cleaning services in all towns. The cleansing function entails the cleaning of streets, open spaces and illegal dumping.

Waste Storage

- Household are able to store garbage temporarily until collection of waste.
- The municipality has provided yellow skip bins at strategic locations mainly in the CBD.

Waste Transportation

- Waste transportation for collection of waste is a major challenge within the municipality,
- Improve the availability of vehicles the following needs to be undertaken:
- Improved maintenance;
- Acquire mechanics for waste vehicles;
- Replacement heavy waste management vehicles every five years;
- Appropriately choose and utilize vehicles;

Waste Transfer

There are no waste transfers within the Municipality, however the Municipality is devising plans to provide such in strategic areas, as transfer of waste helps improve the turnaround time for the disposal of waste, waste minimization and the separation of waste into re-usable components.

4.4.4. WASTE REFUSE CHALLENGES DISPOSAL AND WASTE MANAGEMENT

Waste management and disposal pose significant challenges globally, including the increasing volume of waste, inadequate infrastructure, and the need for sustainable solutions. These challenges are exacerbated by factors like population growth, urbanization, and industrialization. Proper waste management is crucial for public health and environmental protection, requiring a comprehensive approach that includes collection, sorting, treatment, and disposal. In the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality, the following have been noted as significant challenges:

- Refuse removal service is not up to the required standards due to lack of resources;
- Illegal dumping areas both in urban and rural settlements;

- Increased residential development in urban areas often without concurrent increase in resources;
- Non-complete collection of skip bins in public spaces that leads to burning of waste in skips bins, utilization of borrow pits and quarries as dumping sites; and
- No waste management in especially in farm areas that leads to dumping of waste in rivers and wetlands and along the road.

4.4.5. RECYCLING, REUSE AND REDUCE (3R'S) IN THE MUNICIPALITY

Recycling takes place mostly at the landfill. There are informal recyclers who collect recyclable material from household waste bins during collection days at a particular area. This also poses a serious health risk to them as they have to go through waste bins to salvage this recyclable material.

There is currently a recycler's database for SMME's and there are individuals approaching the municipality in search for land to start recycling activities. The active recyclers currently operating in Modimolle are Abbatermarco recycling and Nylstroom Skroot. No financial assistance is given to the SMME's involved in recycling projects. Limpopo Department of Environment and Economic Development is assisting the municipalities with training of the SMME's and application for funding to grow their businesses in the green economy sector.

4.4.6. CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES ON WASTE MANAGEMENT (RE-USE, RECYCLING AND REDUCE)

The challenges in waste management and disposal relate to the effective implementation of reduce, reuse, and recycle strategies, along with the need for improved infrastructure and efficient collection and disposal system. The following were noted:

- Separation of waste at the source – household and business areas
- Lack of equipment – baling machines, bulk bags, folk lifts
- Transportation of material to big cities by SMME's – costly
- Recycling and storage facilities – recyclers store material at their private residence
- Health and safety – lack of personal protective clothing
- Education and awareness
- Training programs
- Funding for SMMEs

4.4.7. COMMENT OF ACCESS TO BASIC SERVICES

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality experienced short falls in the provisioning of Basic Services to its communities due to financial constraints as depicted in the municipal budget. Basic Services to the communities were addressed with the focus on bulk supply and improvement of distribution networks.

4.5 INDIGENTS

The "indigent" households are defined as those with a combined gross income below a certain threshold, typically around R3,200 per month. These households are entitled to subsidized or free municipal services, including water, electricity, sanitation, and refuse removal. The specific criteria and benefits offered to indigent households are determined by the municipality.

The municipality is reviewing and updating its indigent register annually. All qualifying households shall receive free basic services as per indigent policy. For all qualifying indigents the total household income must be R0 to R5000 per month. The indigents will receive basic services as per below table: Indigents will be expected to pay for amounts in excess of the free basic services.

Table 4.11: Free Basic Services (FBS)

Services	Units	No House Holds (HH) Receiving Free Basic Services (FBS)	Total Number of hh
Water	06 kl	1 300	46 119
Electricity	50 units	1 300	46 119
Refuse removal	100%	1 300	46 119
Sanitation	100%	1 300	46 119
Property Rates	100%	1 300	46 119

Source: Mmlm Budget and Treasury

Table 4.12: Household with access to Basic Services

Total no of households		Households with access	Households without access	Total backlogs
Water	46 119	34 315	11 804	11 804
Electricity	46 119	39 733	6 386	6 386
Sanitation	46 119	36 181	9 938	9 938
Waste collection	46 119	27 173	18 946	18 946

Source: MMLM Budget and Treasury and Technical Services

4.6 MUNICIPAL ROADS AND STORM WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

The municipality has powers and functions on internal roads in Phagameng, Mabatlane, Modimolle and Alma. Modimolle is accessible to the N1, that links Gauteng Province and Limpopo Province and the R33 is a freight corridor that connects the east and the west. It is used mostly by trucks passing through Modimolle to Lephalale Local Municipality. The road is very narrow and many accidents have occurred due to the amount of trucks. The R101 continues by way of a right-turn at Potgieter Road in Bela Bela and the route makes a 27 km journey north-east to Modimolle (Nylstroom).

As a straight road passing through Modimolle central, it intersects with the R33. After passing the Phagameng suburb of Modimolle, the R101 turns east towards the bypassing N1 Highway. At Middelfontein, right before the N1 Modimolle north off-ramp, the R101 becomes the road to the west of the N1 (Mookgophong Road, later Modimolle Road) heading north-east. After Kransvlei Farm Resort, the R101 continues by way of a left turn at the T-junction to become the straight road through Mookgophong (Naboomspruit). The distance from Modimolle to Mookgophong is 42 km. Passing through Mookgophong as Thabo Mbeki Street, it intersects with the R519 at Second Avenue and the R520 at Nelson Mandela Drive. While mostly parallel to the N1, it journeys 51 km north-east to Mokopane (Potgietersrus).

There is a plan to commission a feasibility study on the bypass road to Mookgophong/ Lephalale. The R101 road is a link that connects the south to the

east and trucks are restricted to use this road. A fine of R10 000 is being stipulated for non-compliance.

The R519 from Roedtan to Crecy and from Crecy to Mookgophong has severe potholes the road is not user-friendly. Although the R101 from Mookgophong to Mogalakwena is usable it is very bumpy. The accesses road R519 from SPIF chickens also has severe potholes and very bumpy (crucial for Tourism growth because it lead numerous game farms and lodges The highway (N1) has brought lots of relief on the R101 in terms of traffic volumes but the overcrossing bridges are not maintained especially on the sidewalks.

Table 4.13 Municipal Roads Length and Surfaces

The table (4.13) above, gives an outline of different types of roads in the Municipality, and their lengths.

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality is actively working on improving its road infrastructure, with several projects underway and completed. These projects include upgrades to national roads, rehabilitation of existing roads, and the development

of new internal streets. The municipality also faces challenges like road damage from

Area	Surfaced Road(KM)	Gravel Road(KM)	Concrete Block Road(KM)	Total Roads Length (KM)
Modimolle Town	74.014	11.003	3.02	88.037
Phagameng Township	19.34	48.8239	7.43	73.49
Vaalwater	11.75	41.36	7,71	56,82
Mabaleng/Alma	0	4.0949	0.8	4.0957
Mookgophong	21.9	42	21	84.90
Roedtan	4.80	16	3	23.8
Total	131.80	163.28	38,76	
Total length in KM of Roads				331.08
Source: MMLM Desktop Study and Waterberg District Road Integrated Plan				

heavy rains, which have impacted some infrastructure

The municipality is responsible for 331.08 KM of roads. About 43% of these Roads are surfaced while gravel roads constitute 57%.

Table 4.14: Municipal Routes Classification

Economic Routes				
Routes	Description	Powers And Functions	Economy Related Issues	
N1	Classified as a freeway, including the Kranskop & Zebediela toll gate.	SANRAL	Gateway to Limpopo Province and the rest of Africa and access to Gauteng Province.	
P1/3	Classified as a main route, alternative route to the North.	DISTRICT	Access route for tourists in the Warmbaths-Modimolle area.	
P55/1	Classified as an arterial route and situated in the Modimolle & Mookgophong Municipalities.	RAL	Access route to Modimolle and the rest of	

			Waterberg District Municipality.
P1/5	Links the Modimolle road with the N1 on the northern side and is mainly situated in Modimolle	SANRAL	Links Modimolle as well as large part of WDM with the N1 on the northern side.
P1/25	Classified as a national route and situated on the southwestern side of Mokopane.	DISTRICT	Gateway to the north and situated between Naboomspruit and Mokopane.
P2/1	Classified as main route, East West route. Situated mainly in Modimolle-mookgophong and Thabazimbi Local Municipality	RAL	High Volume of tourism activities
R519	Classified as a Regional route, its western terminus is Mookgophong, its takes origin from the R101. It heads south-east crossing the N1, it continues east to Roedtan where it crosses the N11 at a staggered junction	DISTRICT	A link between Ephraim Mogale Local Municipality
R520	Classified as Regional Route. It starts in the town of Mookgophong from the R101 and runs north-west to the village of Vanalphensvlei.	DISTRICT	Access route for tourists in the Mookgophong and Vanalphensvlei Village.
R101	Classified as a Regional parallel routes, gentler alternative to the usual hurtle along the N1. It's an aged, single-lane highway that passes Modimolle and Mookgophong Towns.	RAL	A link between, Bela bela, Mookgophong and its main activities is tourism. The R101 is a feeder road to the trans-Limpopo SDI
Source: MmIm Road Master Plan			

Table 4.15: Tarred Road Infrastructure

Tarred Road Infrastructure					
Financial year	Total Surfaced Roads	New Surfaced Roads	Existing Surfaced Roads	Existing Re-Surfaced	Surfaced Maintained
2020/2021	152,96	0	152,96	0	152,96
2021/2022	152,96	0	152,96	1,1	154,06
2022/2023	154,06	2.2	156,26	11,9	168.16
2023/2024	168,16	4,7	172.86	14	186.86

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.16: Gravel Road Infrastructure

Gravel Road Infrastructure					
Financial year	Total gravel roads	New gravel roads constructed	Gravel roads upgraded to tar	Gravel roads graded/maintained	
2020/2021	163	0	0	163	
2021/2022	163	0	0	163	
2022/2023	163	2.20	0	165,20	
2023/2024	165,20	0	0	165,20	

4.6.2. CHALLENGES ON ROADS AND STORM WATER

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces challenges related to road maintenance and storm water infrastructure. The municipality also faces water service delivery challenges, including deteriorated water systems and frequent pipe bursts, particularly in winter. Some notable challenges include:

- Construction and maintenance of storm water drainage;
- Inadequate and miss-allocation of the budget for tool and materials,
- Aging roads, the roads are over their life span. These roads are mainly in town (needs rehabilitation);
- No integrated Road Master Plan.

Public Transport

The Municipality is the transport authority, although integrated transport plan is not in place the department of roads and transport provides public transport services.

Modes of transport

- Taxis
- Buses
- Railway
- Donkey karts
- Private Vehicles
- Bicycles

Buses facilities

Due to the small nature of the towns it is not economic to run massive public transportation systems. There is therefore no internal bus system running in the Municipality. All major public transportation in the area is sourced from long distance transportation such as buses and taxis that are passing through the town to other major destinations such as Mogalakwena and Polokwane to the north and Modimolle to Gauteng to the south.

Taxi facilities

- 2 x Taxi rank 1 in Modimolle location and 1 in Town
- 1 x taxi rank in Mookgophong town
- Vaalwater

Railway line

The railway line connecting the south to the north is currently active and is being utilized for both passengers and freight goods. The railway link from Modimolle to Vaalwater as well as Roedtan, Crecy and Tuinplaas links are currently closed and was previously used to transport agricultural products.

3.6.4. PUBLIC TRANSPORT CHALLENGES

Public transport in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces challenges. The municipality also struggles with inadequate infrastructure and

service delivery backlogs, impacting its ability to provide effective transport. Some of the most notable include:

- Poor access road.
- Recapitalization of un-roadworthy taxis,
- No formalised taxi rank in Mookgophong Township, Mabaleng and Vaalwater.

Table 4.19: Transport and Community Safety

Activity	Status	Challenges And/Implications	Proposed Intervention
Driver of The Year (DOTY) Competitions	The Department conducts DOTY competitions to the professional drivers in both Private and Public Sectors in order to improve their driving skills on yearly basis.	The budget allocated for the project is limited and it is sometimes difficult to run the project.	Municipalities are required to support the project with resources such as Vehicles used during the District competitions, venue for the competitions, prices etc.
Vehicle Stop & Check	The Department is currently conducting the indicator as provided in the APP which is a Transversal Indicator and which is determined by the number of officers in the District including the Municipalities.	Municipalities are not assisting the Provincial District which results in the indicators not being achieved.Limited number of Personnel and resources in all the municipalities which results on pressure to the Province to concentrate also in their areas of Jurisdictions.	Districts to be invited to Local Strategic sessions in order to share information.

<p>Illegal Public Transport Operators</p>	<p>The Department is conducting operation on illegal operators in all Local municipalities. (250 minibuses were impounded)</p>	<p>Inadequate impoundment Facilities within the Municipality.</p> <p>Municipalities are prioritizing DLTCs than law enforcement activities which compromises services within their communities.</p>	<p>Provision of impoundment Facility for revenue generation.</p> <p>Districts to be invited to Local Strategic sessions in order to share information.</p>
<p>Illegal Public Transport Operators</p>	<p>The Department is conducting operation on illegal operators in all Local municipalities. (250 minibuses were impounded)</p>	<p>Inadequate impoundment Facilities within the Municipality. Municipalities are prioritizing DLTCs than law enforcement activities which compromises services within their communities.</p>	<p>Provision of impoundment Facility for revenue generation.</p> <p>Districts to be invited to Local Strategic sessions in order to share information.</p>
<p>Scholar Patrol</p>	<p>The Department establishes scholar Patrol points when there is a need and where it is demanded by circumstances.</p>	<p>There are challenges of lack of road signs and markings in most of the points and it is difficult for the scholar patrol to function effectively.</p>	<p>Municipalities should assist maintaining the scholar patrol points by regularly marking the road and install road signs when required.</p> <p>Provision of Bill Boards on some roads.</p>



<p>Road Safety Debates and Participatory Educational Techniques(PET)</p>	<p>The Department in conjunction with Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC) and National Department of Transport conduct debates and PET competitions at schools on yearly basis</p> <p>EPWP Road safety Ambassadors.</p>	<p>During PET competitions learners identify road safety problems around their area and come up with solutions. Some of the solutions needs Municipalities to implement.</p> <p>Example, Pedestrian Cross, Speed humps, Round about, Side walk, and cyclist dedicate lane. Non-Corporation from some of local Municipalizes. Unfair selection of candidate.</p>	<p>The support from municipalities is required when the projects are conducted from school level.</p> <p>Post Must be advertised for proper control to give each and every one opportunity.</p>
<p>Registering Authority services</p>	<p>The Department has entered into a memorandum of understanding for the Municipality to provide RA services.</p>	<p>The services are no longer provided at Mookgophong and there is a dire need for these services to be resuscitated.</p>	<p>Municipalities to support the Department by providing the services and adhere to the agreement. (Maintain office buildings)</p>
<p>Revenue collection</p>	<p>Municipality collecting revenue through registration and licensing of vehicles: must pay 80% of the revenue collected to the department.</p>	<p>The municipality owe the department.</p>	<p>Face value forms are not issued to the owing municipalities until the debts are paid off</p>



Provincial Police Secretariat	Community Safety Services.	Influx of illegal liquor outlets in the Township.	Joint monitoring with relevant Sector Departments like SAPS, H/Affairs, LEDET & Community Structures. Development and implementation of joint monitoring programme.
-------------------------------	----------------------------	---	---

Source: Mmlm 2025

4.7 SOCIAL ANALYSIS

Table 4.20: Housing Backlog

Area	Estimated backlog
Modimolle	8000
Mookgophong	6500
Vaalwater	3500
Roetan	2000
Alma	1000
TOTAL	21000

Source: Mmlm 2025

4.7.1. CHALLENGES PERTAINING TO HOUSING PROVISION

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (MMLM) faces significant challenges in housing provision, These challenges are compounded by the municipality's limited financial and human resources, inadequate infrastructure,

and the need to improve service delivery, particularly in water and sanitation. Included in the challenges are:

- Mushrooming of informal settlements
- Lack of municipal owned land for development
- Land invasion on municipal land
- Insufficient funds to acquire land for development
- Insufficient funds for township establishment
- Movement of people from the farms to urban area

Table 4.21: Health Facilities

Health facilities	Number of facilities	Location of Health Facilities
Health Centre	1	Ward 5
Clinics	7	Ward 14,10,5,11,2,3,6
Mobiles Clinics	6	Ward 14,1, 2,3
Private Medical Practitioners	8	Ward 5,10,11,1
Hospital	2	Ward 11
Total	34	

Source: Department of Health 2025

Table 4.22: Top Ten Burden of Diseases

Diseases	Number of Deaths	Percentages
Tuberculosis	520	8.7
Hypertensive disease	392	6.6
Influenza and pneumonia	388	6.5
Diabetes mellitus	379	6.3
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) disease	352	4.2
Cerebrovascular disease	286	4.8
Other forms of heart disease	261	4.4
Other viral diseases	236	3.9
Intestinal infectious disease	209	3.5
Renal failure	149	2.5

Source: Dept ofn Health 2025

4.7.2. TUBERCULOSIS DEATH RATE (TB)

SA adopted the TB 90 90 90 strategy target in 2016. This strategy aim screening 90 of high risk and vulnerable population for TB, diagnosis and treating 90% of those with prevalent TB.

- Ensure the TB prevention and are safeguarded in the context of the COVID-19 pandemic and other emerging treats
- 2018=84.4% (Success rate)
- 2019=81.8%
- 2020=79.8%
- Limpopo is at 77.5% viz target of 79%. Waterberg is at 79.8% the following sub-district affect the district:
(Bela-Bela= 78.6%, Mogalakwena=76.4%, **Modimolle-Mookgophong=74.3%**)
- 2018- 10.8% (Death rate)
- 2019-11%
- 2020-13.4%
- Limpopo is at 14.1% and Waterberg constitute 13.4% death rate the follow sub-district affected the district: Lephalale 11.7% (Mogalakwena 14.3%, **Modimolle-Mookgophong=16.7%**)

Table 4.23: Prevalence of Diseases

Source: DHIS 2021-2022

Table 4.24: Prevalence of Non-Communicable Diseases in 2022

Facilities	Hypertension	Diabetes	Mental Health Disorders
Alma	3215	3807	0
FH Odendaal	8622	11252	-
Modimolle Town Clinic	1381	1443	1
Mookgophong Clinic	11732	12579	4
Mookgophong Health Centre	20375	21607	2
Roedtan	79	80	0
Phagameng	20375	21537	0
Vaalwater	5989	3241	9
Totals	71 768	75 546	16

Programme	Strategic objective	Key programme priorities	Target	Actual	Key Challenges	Key interventions
District Health Services	Strengthen PHC Service delivery	PHC utilization rate	2.7%	1.7%	Clients bypass PHC facilities	Conduct Community dialogues to check the reason why they bypass PHC facilities
HIV&AIDS Control (HAST)	To increase access to comprehensive HIV and AIDS,STI treatment management and support	Total CliRT	7 330	9 904	None	Sustain
		Clients tested for HIV(incl ANC)	20 724	25 992	None	Sustain
Maternal, Child and Women's Health and Nutrition	Reducing Maternal and Child morbidity and mortality	Ante natal 1 st visit before 20 weeks rate	66.6%	65.7%	None	Sustain
		Mother Postnatal visit within 6 days rate	75.1%	52.7%	Mothers not following up at the clinics post natal	Health education to all mothers discharged from the hospital or clinics to follow up within 6 days after birth
		Antenatal client initiated on ART rate	97%	99.1%	None	Sustain
Maternal, Child and Women's	Reducing Maternal and	Infant 1 st PCR test positive	1.2%	0.38%	None	Sustain

Health and Nutrition	Child morbidity and mortality	around (10)weeks rate				
		Child under 5years diarrhoea case fatality rate	2%	3.4%	None	Sustain
		Child under 5years pneumonia case fatality rate	1.6%	0%	None	Sustain
		Child under 5years severe acute Malnutrition case fatality rate	3.7%	17.2%	Parents who are unemployed. Unbalanced diet to children.	Educate community members on greenery projects. Application of Child Support Grant.

Source: Dept of Health 2025

Table 4.25: Challenges and Interventions of Emergency Medical Services

No	Number of Deaths	Percentages
1	Reduction in the number of operational vehicles due to long vehicle downtime	Engagement with service provider to ensure EMS fleet prioritized with repairs.
2	Delays in authorizing repairs.	Authority to approve minor repairs delegated to district level.
3	Paramedics involved in Inter Facility Transfers & not available for primary response.	Two service providers appointed for Inter Facility Transfers, to allow provincial paramedics to respond to primary P1 calls.
4	Long distances and bad roads involved in responding to rural calls.	Satellite EMS stations Engage role players on road infrastructure.

Source: Dept of Health 2025

4.7.2: Challenges of Health facilities

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces significant challenges in ensuring the delivery of effective healthcare services. Specifically, concerns exist regarding the availability of necessary infrastructure and equipment, the sustainable management of limited resources, and the need to address service delivery gaps, which can impact the quality and accessibility of healthcare in the area. Some of the challenges include:

- The clinics are visited once a week by a medical doctor; (Mookgophong, Vaalwater, Alma)
- There is no local general practitioner in Roedtan;
- No Aids/ HIV council;
- All the clinics need upgrading as there are not enough consultation rooms and inadequate space;
- All clinics need to work 24 hours; and
- There is no accommodation of staff.
- Vaalwater Clinic: Nurses home – only for 4 nurses. Need more space and accommodation
- Vaalwater Clinic: No mobile clinics working.
- Vaalwater Clinic: The staff establishment insufficient and was last reviewed in 2007 it's not suited for 24 hour service.
- Vaalwater Clinic: waiting room freezing cold during winter.
- Paving outside clinic and marking parking bays.
- Signage to the clinic from the main road
- Signage outside the gates
- Vaalwater Clinic: Need municipal water to be connected
- Need to replace glass in windows: All Clinics
- No further training for nurses: All Clinics

Table 4.26: Social Development Facilities in the Municipality (ECD Reopening Status)

Location/ town	Partial Care database	Partial Care centres monitored	Number of Partial Care Centres	Number of After Care Centres	Number of Partial Care Centres operatin g	Number of children accessing After Care Services
Modimolle	01 after care	01 after care	01 after care Tlouter Kaboteur	01 after care	01 after care	24
Mookgoph ong	04 Aftercare	04 Aftercare	04 Aftercare Paradise-17 Eves After Care-17 Wonderland -19 Children of miracle-12	04 Aftercare	04 Aftercare	75
Vaalwater	0	0	0	0	0	0
Modimolle - Mookgoph ong	0-funded 6-non- funded 06- registered	0-funded 6-non- funded 06- registered	0-funded 6-non- funded 06- registered	0-funded 6-non- funded 06-registered	0-funded 6-non- funded 06- registere d	99

Drop in Centres 2025/2026

Location/Town	No of registered drop in centers exist	No of Drop in receive funding	No of beneficiaries accessing DIC	Number of DICs sited not funded	Overall backlog of unregistered sites
Modimolle	01	01 Dira O Direle DIC	146	0	0
Mookgophong	01	01 Mookgophong DIC	121	0	0
Vaalwater	01	01 WWS DIC	100	0	0
Total	03	03	367	01	01

Victim Empowerment Centres 2025/2026

Location/Town	No of VEP	No of funded centres	Number of beneficiaries accessing VEP	Overall backlog of unregistered sites	Number of beneficiaries accessing VEP 01April 2024 to date
Modimolle	01	01 Modimolle VEP	251	0	251
Mookgophong	01	01 Mookgophong VEP	231	0	213
Vaalwater	01	01 Vaalwater VEP	147	0	147
Total	03	03	611 for 2024/2025	0	611

Old Age Homes

Programme	Key programme	Status quo in terms of norms	Number of older person	Backlogs	Challenges
-----------	---------------	------------------------------	------------------------	----------	------------

	priorities (2025/2026)	and standards of the department	in residential facilities		
Old age homes	Provision of services to older persons	Modimolle-01 Waterberg Tehuis	Modimolle-39	No backlog	Unit costs of the residential facilities are high and this result in older person leaving the residential facilities due to financial constraints.
Old age homes	Provision of services to older persons	Mookgophong-01 Naboom Old Age Home	Mookgophong-84	No backlog	Unit costs of the residential facilities are high and this result in older person leaving the residential facilities due to financial constraints.
Old age homes	Provision of services to older persons	Vaalwater 0	Vaalwater 0	None	None
Total		02 Old Age Homes	123		

The residential facilities were operational throughout the lockdown period and had to operate under strict measures prescribed by National DSD

Child And Youth Care Centres 2025/2026

Programme	Key programme priorities (2025/2026)	Status quo in terms of norms and standards of the department	Number of children in child and youth care facilities	Backlogs	Challenges
Child and youth care centres	Provision of services to children in need of care and protection	Modimolle-01 Abraham Kriel Kinderhuis(CYCC)	Modimolle-170	None	None
Child and youth care centres	Provision of services to children in need of care and protection	No service for children	Mookgophong-0	None	No service to children rendered in Q4
Total		01 CYCC	170		

The residential facilities were operational throughout the lockdown period and has to operate under strict measures prescribed by National DSD

Aged Service Centres (Community Based Care Centres)

Programme	Key programme priorities (2025/2026)	Status quo in terms of norms and standards of the department	Number of older persons accessing	Backlogs	Challenges
------------------	---	---	--	-----------------	-------------------

			service centers		
Community Based Care Centres	Provision of services to older persons	Modimolle-03 1.Phagameng Service Centre 61 2.Waterberg Dienssentrum 25 3.Kokanje 856	Modimolle-942	None	-Poor infrastructure in most existing sites -Lack of infrastructure and land -Lack of basic services at existing sites i.e water, electricity and sanitation -insufficient budget
Community Based Care Centres	Provision of services to older persons	Vaalwater1 Matlhaku Service Centre	Vaalwater 61	None	-Poor infrastructure in most existing sites -Lack of infrastructure and land -Lack of basic services at existing sites i.e water,



					electricity and sanitation -insufficient budget
Community Based Care Centres	Provision of services to older persons	Mookgophong-03 1.Mookgophong Service Centre 122 2.Lewensvreug Dienssentrum 270 3.Die Oog 25	Mookgophong-417 Mookgophong Service Centre building destroyed by heavy rains	None	-Poor infrastructure in most existing sites -Lack of infrastructure and land
Community Based Care Centres	Provision of services to older persons	1.Roedtan Thusang Service Centre 40	Roedtan 40	Awaiting registration certificate	-Lack of infrastructure and land -Lack of basic services at existing sites i.e water, electricity and sanitation -insufficient budget Inability for new sites to afford fees



					for Municipal EHP, reports
Total		08 CBCSS 04 funded 04-non-funded 08-registered	1460		

Service centres are currently not operational as the targeted beneficiaries are the most vulnerable to Covid-19

Social Relief Beneficiaries

Municipality 2025-2026	Number of SRD Applications Assessed	Number of Food Parcels Distributed	Number of Food Parcels Required	
Modimolle	100	79	100	
Mookgophong	60	56	50	
Vaalwater	50	23	50	
Total	210	158	200	

Table 4.28: Community Outreach Projects

Community Corrections Office	Name of Project	Community Outreach
Modimolle	Phagameng Old Age	General maintenance and cleaning.
Mookgophong	Mashishi family : House	Refurbishment of a burned house.
Mookgophong	Mookgophong Primary School: Painting of road markings	The parolees and probationers painted the road markings for the school in order for the learners to learn more about traffic signs and safety.
Mabatlane	WWS Drop-in-Centre :Vegetable Garden	The Mahlaka Itireleng Centre for the aged and needy families together with the Drop-in-Center are the beneficiary of this vegetable project.

Table 4.29: Children enrolled in Early Childhood Development facilities (ECD)

	Numbers	Percent	Comments
Number of children registered	2775	115.96%	The 88 ECDs are 115.96% filled (beyond capacity - overflowing)
Official Capacity	2393		
Gender:			
Female children	1436	51.73%	Slightly more girls than boys
Male children	1339	48.25%	
Race:			
African	2377	85.66%	Population is mainly African children and Whites; the rest is slightly below 2.62% combined

Source: DSD ECD Census 2021

- There are **2 775 (19.73%)** children in 88 ECD facilities where the census data was captured, an average of 32 children per facility.
- The 0 to 5-year child population of Modimolle-Mookgophong LM is estimated at **14 065**.
- Therefore about **11 290 (80.27%)** children in the LM are not enrolled and may not be accessing ECD services in the Municipality.

Table 4.30: ECD Educators in the ECD Facilities

	Numbers	Percent	Comments
Number of staff	432	93.34%	98.34% ECD staff receive a salary
Salary paid	425		
Gender			
Female	374	86.57	86.57% of staffs are females
Male	58	13.43%	13.43% of staff are males
Employment status			
Permanent	382		The total number of staff is 432
Contract	432		
Full-time	382		
Staff Category			
Grade R Educator	3	0.69%	
ECD Practitioner	193	44.68%	44.68% are ECD practitioners
Managerial staff	102	23.61%	
Support staff	140	32.41%	
Qualification			
Accredited skills programme	90	37.04%	56.25% of staff have qualifications as indicated
ECD NQF level 4-5	127	52.26%	
ECD NQF Level 6-9	26	10.70%	
Qualified staff	243	100.00%	

Source:DSD ECD Census 2021

- There are 432 staff employed, of which 44.68% (193) are ECD practitioners.
- On an average there is 5 (432/89) staff and 2.1 (193/89) practitioners per facility.
- 98.34% (425) ECD staff receive a salary and 86.57% (374) of staffs are females.
- The child: Staff ratio of the LM is calculated as 6 (2775/432) and child: ECD Practitioner ratio is 14 (2775/243)

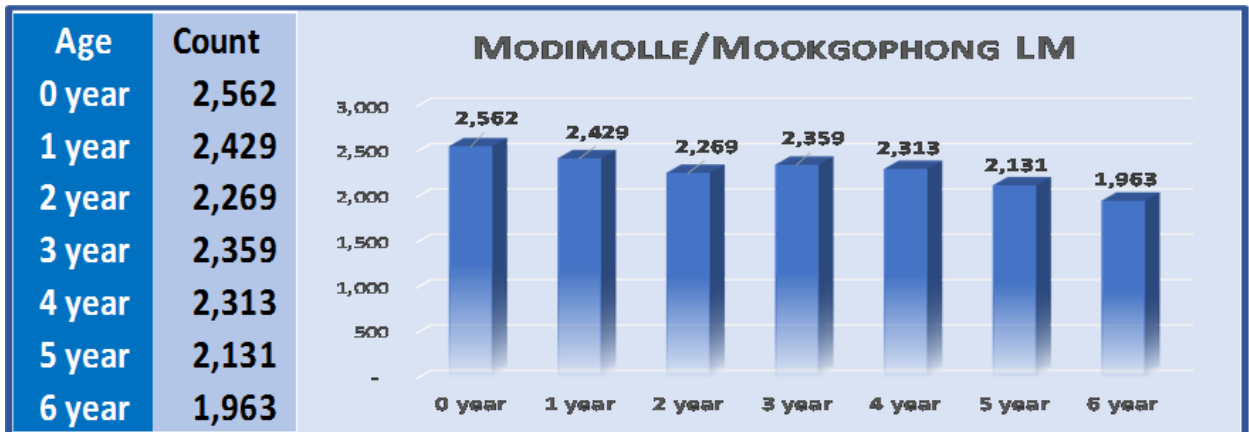
Table 4.31: Ownership of the Facilities and Land of the Surveyed ECDs

The Ownership of the ECD facilities			Ownership of the land used for the ECD facility.		
FACILITIES	Number	Percent	LAND	Number	Percent
Another private individual	11	12.67%	Another private individual	10	11.49%
Community Centre	12	13.79%	Community Centre	11	12.64%
Municipality	2	2.30%	Municipality	2	2.30%
Not-for profit organisation	1	1.15%	Not-for profit organisation	2	2.30%
Private business	1	1.15%	Private business	2	2.30%
Religious institution (e.g., church, mosque)	3	3.45%	Religious institution (e.g., church, mosque)	3	3.45%
School	4	4.60%	School	5	5.75%
The ECD Programme	7	8.05%	The ECD Programme	7	8.05%
The person in charge of the programme (e.g., principal, matron, child-minder, playgroup leader)	46	52.87%	The person in charge of the programme (e.g., principal, matron, child-minder, playgroup leader)	45	51.72%
Total	87	100.00%	Total	87	100.00%

Source: DSD ECD Census 2021

- About 52.87% (46) of ECD facilities are owned by the person in charge of the programme (e.g., principal, matron, child-minder, playgroup leader), 13.79% (12) by the Community Centre, 12.64% (11) by another private individual and the rest by various other stakeholders.
- On ownership of the land used for the ECD facility, 51.72% (45) is owned by the person in charge of the programme (e.g., principal, matron, child-minder, playgroup leader), 41.51% is owned by the community centre; 12.64% (11) by the Community Centre, 11.49% (10) by another private individual and the rest by various other stakeholders.

- None of the facility is situated in a school premise.
Child Population between 0-5years is above 14 340 in the entire Municipality



Source: Waterberg District, Limpopo Province- For Ward Level Demand Planning November 2022

4.8. SAFETY AND SECURITY

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality provides safety and security in terms of physical security and CCTV Cameras. The in-house security services (officers) are deployed 24/7 at the Modimolle-Mookgophong main buildings, satellites offices, and both Licencing Testing Stations. It is also responsible for monitoring and investigating all the incidents encountered in all properties of the Municipality.

Table 4.32: Safety and Security facilities

Area	No of Police Station	Correctional Services
Mookgophong Police Station	1	-
Tuinplaas Police Station	1	-
Vaalwater Police Station	1	-
Modimolle Police Station	1	1
Rankanspass Police Station	1	-
Dorset Police Station	1	-
Roedtan	1	-
Total	7	1

Table 4.33: Modimolle-Mookgophong Crime Statistics

Municipality	Type of Crime	Crime Reported	Top 10 Worst Police Station Precinct	Ratings
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Theft of Motor Vehicle and Motorcycle	32-32 Remain the same	Modimolle	9
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs	89-96	Modimolle	9

Source:SAPS 2025

4.8.1. SAFETY AND SECURITY BACKLOGS

The safety and security challenges in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality include

- Domestic Violence
- Access to certain crime scenes due to bad roads and lights conditions
- Illegal operations of unlicensed sheebens and taverns

4.8.2. CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

Integrated Development Programme (IDP) report for Modimolle Centre of Excellence, Modimolle , Mookgophong and Mabatlane Community Corrections offices, Waterberg District Municipality with the total case load of **687** incarcerated offenders and **251** reintegrated parolees and probationers. The mandate of the Department of Correctional Services is to provide the best correctional services for a safer South Africa by contributing to a just, peaceful and safer South Africa through effective and humane incarceration of offenders and the rehabilitation and reintegration of parolees and probationers back into the communities; to promote corrections as a societal responsibility. These parolees and probationers are skilled labourers and have the potential to serve their communities by ploughing back to the community they have wronged/broken. They also need support and

encouragement to restart their lives in order to curb reoffending and break the cycle of crime.

Table 4.34: Department of Correctional Services Institutions/Offices

Department of Correctional Services institutions/Offices in the Waterberg District Municipality	Local Municipalities
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modimolle Centre of Excellence • Modimolle Community Corrections • Mookgophong Community Corrections • Mabatlane Community Corrections 	Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality

Source:DCS 2025

Table 4.35: Modimolle Centre of Excellence : Polokwane Management Area

Correctional Centre	Case load Sentenced	Adults	Elderly	Youth	Juveniles	Lifers	Foreigners
Modimolle Centre of Excellence	504	239	01	68	15	25	156

Source:DCS 2025

Table 4.36: Parole Conditions and Monitoring of Parolees and Probationers:

Community Corrections Office	Parole Conditions:	Monitoring per risk category
Modimolle , Mookgophong and Mabatlane	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • House arrest • Restriction to one or more magisterial district • Refrains from committing a criminal offence • Refrains from visiting a particular place. 	<p>High risk category: monitored 08 times per month</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 04 physical monitoring at home • 01 office consultation • 01 office visit • 02 telephone call <p>Medium risk category: monitored 04 times per month</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 02 physical monitoring at home

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be subjected to monitoring. • Treatment programmes • Perform community service 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 office consultation • 01 office visit /telephone call <p>Low risk category: monitored 02 times per month</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 physical monitoring at home • 01 office consultation
Modimolle , Mookgophong, Mabatlane,	<p>Social Work Programs: Reintegration programs in accordance with the crime committed</p>	<p>Murder:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anger management • Conflict management • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship <p>Rape:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sexual offender’s treatment program • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship <p>Domestic violence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship • Life skills <p>Assault common/GBH</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anger management • Conflict management <p>Fraud/theft/housebreaking</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resilience enhancing program • Life skills <p>Dealing with substance</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Substance abuse treatment program • Cool and fit for life <p>Robbery/armed robbery</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resilience enhancing program



		<p>Culpable homicide</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Life skills • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue <p>Child neglect</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parenting skills • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship
--	--	--

Source: DCS 2025

Table 4.37: Rehabilitation Programmes (Modimolle Centre of Excellence)

Type of programme	Description
<p>Social Work programs: Rehabilitation programs in accordance with the crime committed</p>	<p>Murder:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anger management • Conflict management • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship <p>Rape:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sexual offender's treatment program • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship <p>Domestic violence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship • Life skills <p>Assault common/GBH</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anger management • Conflict management <p>Fraud/theft/housebreaking</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resilience enhancing program • Life skills <p>Dealing with substance</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Substance abuse treatment program • Cool and fit for life <p>Robbery/armed robbery</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resilience enhancing program <p>Culpable homicide</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Life skills • Victim offender mediation/victim offender dialogue <p>Child neglect</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parenting skills • Sisonke marriage, family care, relationship
Education and training programme:	<p>Adult Education and training:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Level 3-4 <p>TVET:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Business Management studies N1-N6 • Engineering studies N1-N6 <p>Recreation activities/Programs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FUNDA Mzansi Reading Competition • Choir competitions • Indoor games
Care programme:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide inmates with HIV/AIDS/TB services to improve life expectancy • Provide inmates with appropriate nutritional services. • Provide inmates with appropriate hygiene services during the period of incarceration.

Source:DCS 2025

Table 4.38: Challenges and Solutions

Challenges	Solutions
Overcrowding in the Correctional Centres: Modimolle Centre of Excellence	Alternative sentencing 276(1)(h) and 62(f) the NPA could assist by the implementation of alternative sentences to curb overcrowding in the Correctional Centres.
Unemployment	Due to the criminal records the offenders not able to find suitable employment. The Municipality could assist the Department by absorbing them contractually in the EPWP. Unemployment leads to reoffending and absconding of offenders from the system of community corrections.

Stigma	The stigmatisation of the offenders is rave it is only put under control by conducting crime awareness campaign and community outreaches; which tends to offer more information to the community about the mandate of the Department and also addresses the stigma posed on the offenders.
--------	--

Source:DCS 2025

4.9. EDUCATION ANALYSIS

The purpose of this section is to determine the level of provision and backlogs in relation to norms and standards for provision of educational services/ All schools are provided with norms and standard, in line with the allocated amount per school.

Table 4.39: Summarised Categories of Schools

Total Number of Schools		Public				Independant			
Circuit	Total Schools	Primary	Combined	High School	Lsen	Primary	Combined	High School	Lsen
Naboomspuit	15	7	2	4		2	-	-	-
Nylstroom	18	8	1	3	2	3	1	1	-
Vaalwater	13	8	-	4	-	-	1	-	-
Total	46	23	3	11	2	5	2	1	-

Source:DBE 2025

Table 4.40: Category of Schools

No.	District	Circuit	Emis No	Name of school	Phase	Sector
1	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120034	B.B. Matlaila	PRI	P
2	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120126	Dikubu	PRI	P
3	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	991102400	Euphorbia	PRI	I
4	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120324	Hoerskool Hans Strijdom	SEC	P
5	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120515	Bysonderheid agricultural secondary school	SEC	P
6	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120522	Laerskool Eugene N. Marais	PRI	P
7	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	907130574	Laerskool Tuinplaas	PRI	P
8	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906120621	Letamong	COMB	P
9	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	910130673	Lord Milner	PRI	P
10	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906121877	Makhutjisha	SEC	P
11	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906121051	Mokhari	SEC	P
12	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	991102401	Mookgophong	PRI	P
13	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	991102402	Paradise primary	PRI	P
14	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	906121822	Roedtan	COMB	P
15	Waterberg	Naboomsp ruit	910131560	Settlers Agricultural	SEC	P
16	Waterberg	Nylstroom	991104206	Cape to cairo christian academy primary school	PRI	I
17	Waterberg	Nylstroom	991104205	Cradle academy primary school	PRI	I
18	Waterberg	Nylstroom	907130130	Dagbreek	PRI	P

No.	District	Circuit	Emis No	Name of school	Phase	Sector
19	Waterberg	Nylstroom	99110420 1	Hector Peterson	PRI	P
20	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713032 1	Hoerskool Nylstroom	SEC	P
21	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713052 9	Laerskool Eenheid	PRI	P
22	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713055 0	Laerskool Nylstroom	PRI	P
23	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713064 2	Lekkerbreek	PRI	P
24	Waterberg	Nylstroom	91013237 9	Maokeng	PRI	P
25	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90913822 2	Modimolle -1	PRI	P
26	Waterberg	Nylstroom	99110420 7	Modimolle christian academy primary school	PRI	I
27	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713124 9	Nylstroom	PRI	P
28	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713127 0	Phagameng	SEC	P
29	Waterberg	Nylstroom	99110420 0	Solomon Mahlangu	SEC	P
30	Waterberg	Nylstroom	90713161 4	Susan Strijdom	SNE	P
31	Waterberg	Nylstroom	91013167 6	Thusanang	SNE	P
32	Waterberg	Nylstroom	91013177 5	Ulando	COMB	P
33	Waterberg	Nylstroom	99110420 2	Waterbergskool Vir Cvo	COMB	I
34	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713007 9	Boschdraai	PRI	P
35	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713020 8	E.A. Davidson	PRI	P
36	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713050 5	Laerskool Alma	PRI	P
37	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713222 8	Laerskool Doornfontein 839	PRI	P

No.	District	Circuit	Emis No	Name of school	Phase	Sector
38	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713058 1	Laerskool Vaalwater	PRI	P
39	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713197 3	Leseding	SEC	P
40	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713231 3	Mahlasedi	PRI	P
41	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713083 3	Meetsetshehla	SEC	P
42	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713084 0	Melkrivier	PRI	P
43	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713099 4	Mohlakamotala	SEC	P
44	Waterberg	Vaalwater	91013307 8	Mokolo	PRI	P
45	Waterberg	Vaalwater	90713106 5	Moshia	SEC	P
46	Waterberg	Vaalwater	99110440 3	Waterberg Academy	COMB	Independent

Source:DBE 2025

Table 4.41: Backlogs in Classrooms, Water, Sanitation & Electricity in Schools

Location of School	Shortage of Schools
Modimolle	1 Secondary and 2 Primary
Mobile classes on backlog	Modimolle 12xPhagameng High School Mookgophong 4x Mokhari Primary School

Table 4.42: Backlog on Schools

No	New Schools	Classrooms	Water	Sanitation	Electricity
01	06	98	02	06	None

4.44: Matric Results 2024

Circuit	Wrote	Bachelor	Diploma	High Certificate	Achieved	Not Achieved	2024 Achieved	2023 Achieved
Nylstroom	601	600	238	207	72	517	86.2%	79.3%
Naaboomspruit	387	381	168	117	51	336	88.2%	88.0%
Vaalwater	212	208	90	62	37	189	90.9%	62.3%
Warmbath	672	260	191	103	554	118	82.4%	79.4%
Thabazimbi	303	124	69	34	227	76	74.9%	80.7%
Ellisras	460	223	146	54	423	37	92.0%	89.3%
Dwaalboom	220	109	78	24	211	9	95.9%	87.9%
Palala North	397	145	103	75	323	74	81.4%	69.9%
Palala South	490	154	156	81	391	99	79.8%	68.4%
Total	3742	2204	1239	757	2289	1455	85%	78.4%

Source: DBE 2024

4.9.1. RATIO OF TEACHER/LEARNER IN SCHOOLS IN THE MUNICIPALITY

- Ratio for secondary schools and primaries are different: Secondary= 1:35
- Primaries: = 1:40

4.9.2. ENROLMENT FIGURES VIS A VIS POTENTIAL SCHOOL-GOERS

- Waterberg District School Enrolment is 88 409
 - Naboom Circuit= 8 406
 - Nylstroom Circuit= 12 649
 - Vaalwater Circuit= 6 416
- Potential school goers is 97% out of 100% of enrolment figure

4.9.3. EDUCATION CHALLENGES

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality faces several education challenges. There are issues related to service delivery, including resource shortages and a lack of capacity to address infrastructure needs. Some of the challenges include:

- No teachers for specialised subjects
- Inadequate or lack of water
- Poor performance of the students (they need motivation)
- Drop out (need motivation to further studies)
- Farm schools
- Overcrowding of schools around Modimolle
- No schools in new settlements
- Learners without ID documents
- School damaged during community unrest in Mookgophong
- Old and dilapidated infrastructure

Higher Education Report :Lephalale TVET College (Modimolle Campus for 2023 & 2024)

Enrolments:

There are no post-school institutions; Lephalale FET College is about to build a satellite facility in Phagameng.

Our total enrolments from July to December 2022 was 124 students, for 2023 we have 177 and there are still students that will enrol in July for the last block. We only have 21 seats in a class, if we have 30 seats then our numbers can increase.

Class Rooms/Sanitary:

At this stage we have 5 class rooms, two are computer labs. We do not have a staff room or hall where all the students can assemble. There are two toilets that can be used by the students and one toilet for the staff to use. We do not have a generator so when there is load shedding we have no power.

Results of 2022:

Office admin: Level 2 enrolled 24 students progression rate 71%

Level 3 enrolled 24 students progression rate 63 %

Level 4 enrolled 22 students progression rate 20%

Management assistant: N4 enrolled 16 students progression rate 40%

N5 enrolled 13 students progression rate 58%

N6 enrolled 27 students progression rate 48%

Table 4.45: Categories of Social Grants

Area	Modimolle	Mookgophong
Old Age Grant	5 690	2 802
Disability Grant	1 711	580
Foster Care Grant	240	157
Grant in Aid	650	608
Care Dependency Grant	275	93
Child Support Grant	11 984	5 008
Total	20 550	9 248

Source: SASSA 2025

Table 4.46: Requirements of Different Grants

Old Age Grant	Disability Grant	Child Support Grant
Must be South African citizen; permanent resident or refugee	Must be South African citizen; permanent resident or refugee	The primary care giver must be a South African citizen , permanent residence or refugee
Must be 60 years or older	Must be resident in South Africa	Both the applicant and the child must reside in South Africa
Must not be maintained or cared for in a State Institution	Must be 18 to 59 years of age	The child must be 18 years of age or younger
Must not be in receipt of another social grant for himself or herself	Must submit a medical/assessment report confirming disability and the medical assessment must not be older than 3 months at date of application	Must provide a birth certificate for the child
Must submit a 13 digit barcoded identity document or the smart ID card	Must not be in receipt of another social grant in respect of himself or herself	Must provide a 13 barcoded identity document or smart card for the parent

Source: SASSA 2025

Challenges of SASSA

The primary challenge in Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality regarding social grants appears to be their misuse and the potential for dependency, rather than their intended purpose of reducing unemployment and poverty. While social grants are a crucial tool, the municipality faces challenges in effectively implementing and utilizing them to achieve their intended goals of economic empowerment and development.

4.11. SPORTS, ARTS AND CULTURE

Facilities	Number
Community Halls(Peter Nchabeleng, OR Tambo Hall, Yusuf Dadoo,Mookgophong Hall, Banquet Hall, Roedtan Hall, Leseding Hall 1, Leseding Hall 2)	8
Stadia (Phagameng,Mookgophong, Vallwater, Roedtan)	4
Golf course (Mookgophong Managed by contract)	1
Netball court (Phagameng x2, Mookgophong x2, Vaalwater x1)	5
Volley ball court (Phagameng x2, Mookgophong x2, Vaalwater x1)	5
Tennis Court (Phagameng x2, Modimolle x5 managed by contract)	7
Roolball Court (Modimolle Town x3 managed by contract)	3
Basketball Court (Phagameng x2, Vaalwater x1)	3
Municipal Parks (Boshoff park in Modimolle, Limpopo/NTK park in Modimolle, Hafen Park in Modimolle, Railway Park in Phagameng, Ward 7 Park in Phagameng, Alma Park, Vodacom Park in Mookgophong, Golf Park in Mookgophong, Mookgophong Township Park, Leseding Park in Vaalwater)	10

Table 4.47: Municipal Recreational Facilities

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.48: Allocation of Recreational Facilities

Facilities	Number	Ward
Community halls	8	5,10,14,1x2,6,12,13
Parks	10	10,4
Stadium	4(1xPhagameng,1x Roedtan,2xMookgophong)	4,7,14,10
Golf course	1	5
Volley/netball courts	10	1,7,10,14

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.49: Backlogs of Recreational Facilities

Facility	Number	Area/Ward
	3 (Mookgophong x2/Roedtan x1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sports Centre
	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sports centre
	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sports Canter
Mookgophong	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tennis Court
Modimolle		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.50: Number of Libraries

Area	Type of Facility	Personnel
Modimolle Town	Main Library (Ruth First Memorial)	3xStaff + 1xfrom (Department of Sport and Culture) total 4
Vaalwater	Mabatlane (Branch Library)	Staff x2
Waterberg District Office	Waterberg District Library	Unknown
Kokanje Old Age	Private Library	Unknown
Abraham Kriel Children`s home	Private Book Deposit	Unknown
Mookgophong	Mobile Libraries Mookgophong towship x1 plus one Mobile library (Provincial Library),	2x Vacant post (Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality), 2x Provincial department

Area	Type of Facility	Personnel
Roedtan	Thusang x1 (Provincial Libraries)	2x Provincial department 1x Vacant (Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality)

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.51: Backlogs of Libraries

Area	Number	Ward/Section
Mookgophong	1	All wards
Modimolle	1	All wards
Alma	1	All wards
Vaalwater	1	All wards

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 4.52: Name and Number of Cemeteries

Area	Number	Condition
Mookgophong	4	3 Closed 1 Operational
Thusang	1	1 Operational
Roedtan	1	1 Operational
Modimolle	3	2 Closed 1 Operational
Mabaleng/Alma	1	1 Operational
Vaalwater	2	1 Closed 1 Operational
Total	12	

Source: Mmlm 2025

4.11.1: Challenges Regarding Libraries, Parks and Cemeteries and Sports, Art and Culture

- Shortage of new books and books theft
- Electronic Cemetery Management System
- Replacement of retired staff
- Shortage of air conditioners in all municipal libraries

- Shortage of book shelves
- Lack of sports programme
- The roof is leaking
- Lack of maintenance
- Repair of vernalized facilities
- Installation of security system
- Waterlock for Modimolle and Mookgophong cemeteries (high water table)

Table 4.53: Network and Post Office Services

Post Office and Agencies		
Area	Type of Facility	Grade of Facility
Modimolle Town	Post office	1
Naboomspruit	Post Office	1
Roadtan Post Office	Post office	1
Vaalwater	Post office	Unbranded
Alma/Mabaleng	Retail Agency	Retail Postal agency : Type C
Rankin's Pass	Retail Agency	Retail Postal Agency: Type C
Kokanje	Retail Agency	Retail Postal Agency: Type B
Modimolle	Utility Couriers	Retail Postal Agency
Source: MMLM 2025		

4.12. TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICES

Radio Stations in Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality has two radio stations namely:

- Waterberg Stereo-English and Afrikaans covering Modimolle area
- Waterberg Waves-Sepedi and Enlish covering Vaalwater area
- No telecentre in the municipality

ICT Penetration

- Coverage is good in Modimolle, Phagameng, Mookgophong town and township, and Vaalwater.

- Coverage is poor in Leseding (Vaalwater), Thusong (Roedtan) and Alma

Aerials Ownership

- Vodacom
- MTN

Existing ICT Infrastructure (Fibre Service Providers)

- Limpopo Connections
- MEGS
- Herotel
- Keyter Technologies
- Open Server

Wi-fi

- There is no free wi-fi across the municipal boundaries
- Price of data not affordable to the majority of the community
- Community members are connected in their capacities with private service providers

Challenges of network Infrastructure

- Mabatlane/Vaalwater find the reception difficult with all network service providers
- There is no network coverage at Mabaleng/Alma
- Wi-Fi is still not available in all public place.

CHAPTER 5: KPA 3 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

5.1. INTRODUCTION

Chapter 7, Section 152 of the Constitution outlines the developmental mandate of local government. Subsection (b) obligates Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality to implement activities that promote the social and economic development of local communities. The municipal local economic development unit aims at developing an integrated strategic plan on economic deliverables and creating a conducive environment for business to prosper. The local economic development function in the municipality offers the following services:

- Street trading management and control
- SMMEs capacity building and SMMEs development
- Issuing business registration and licensing
- Fostering partnership development approach (Public Private Partnership)
- Facilitation of Social Labour Plans/Corporate responsibilities from private sector
- Implementation of Community Work Programme
- Managing the local business hives
- Tourism development, marketing & Promotion

However, the municipality to have sustainable economic development plans; it relies mainly on working relations with strategic partners such as government sector departments, state owned enterprises and private sectors.

5.2. LED FORUM

The municipality have functional local economic forum, that sits once in a quarter. The forum has approved terms of reference that guide its functionality, it is chaired by head of portfolio. The comprises of municipality, government departments and private sector. Through the forum the municipality has manage to implement programs and projects.

The main economic sectors in the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality include the following:

- Agriculture
- Mining
- Tourism
- Manufacturing

The municipality has a strong transport and communication infrastructure, which is essential for facilitating trade and movement within and outside the area. Government services also contribute to the municipality's economic activity and are essential for providing public services to the residents. Trade is an important sector, with various trading activities taking place within the municipality, and Community services are also essential for supporting the residents and contributing to the overall well-being of the area.

Table 5.1: Economic Profile

Income per annum	Municipality	% to Limpopo
No income	1.8%	0.03%
R 1 - R 400	37.2%	0.63%
R 401 – R 800	26.8%	0.45%
R 801 – R 1600	16.6%	0.28%
R 1601 - R 3200	9.3%	0.16%
R 3201 - R 6400	5.1%	0.09%
R 6401 - R 12800	2.1%	0.03%
R 12801 – R 25600	0.7%	0.01%
R 25601 – R 51200	0.2%	0.00%
R 51201 – R 102400	0.1%	0.00%

R 102401 - R 204800	0.1%	0.00%
R 204801 or more	0.1%	0.00%
Total	100%	1.69%

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

Table 5.2: Key Economic Drivers (Jobs created through the municipal economic sectors)

Formal Employment	Number
Agriculture	6,750
Mining	646
Manufacturing	1,440
Electricity	191
Construction	1,280
Trade	3,840
Transport	355
Finance	2,080
Community services	5,750
Households	3,610

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

5.3. OTHER ECONOMIC OPPORTUNITIES

Modimolle-Mookgopong Local Municipality has a diverse economy with tourism as a key driver. Other opportunities include agriculture, mining, and government initiatives like the EPWP. The municipality is also working on strengthening service delivery and promoting local economic development. Some include the following:

- Industrialization
- Heritage/ Eco-tourism (Modimolle mountain)
- Biodiversity (Waterberg Biosphere reserve & Nylsvlei nature reserve)
- Recycling
- Agro-processing

5.2.2. AGRICULTURAL ACTIVITIES

Agricultural opportunities in Modimolle-Mookgopong Local Municipality include:

- Livestock farming
- Game farming
- Poultry farming
- Crop farming

The municipality also forms part of the red/white meat and horticulture corridors/clusters identified in the Limpopo PGDS. The meat cluster is estimated to have value of R525 million (excluding feeding and value adding to carcasses) in Mookgophong alone whereas the horticulture (fruit and vegetable) has an estimated turnover excess of R364 million in the Waterberg district.

The red//white meat cluster should build on current and emergent cattle and poultry production, as well as animal feed production, and should be expanded to incorporate under-utilised facilities such as state farms. The growing trend towards game farming is also critical in incorporating the venison market into this cluster. Goat production can also be added.

The second cluster, fruit and vegetable production, needs to be extended up-stream to include the local production of inputs for growing selected fruit and vegetable commodities such as plant material production, nurseries, pesticides and fertilisers (including organic fertilisers).

Major commodities that are produced in the Municipality

- Red Meat (beef, lamb, chevron)
- Horticulture (peaches, plums, citrus, grapes, nectarines, vegetables)
- Grains (maize, sunflower, wheat)
- Industrial crops (tobacco, cotton)

Major agricultural produce

- Biggest producer of cotton crops
- Largest producer of egg layers
- Largest producer of groundnuts
- Largest producer of broilers
- Second biggest producer of sunflower and citrus
- Third largest producer of vegetables
- Third largest producer of potatoes
- Fourth largest producer of wheat

- Maize production

5.2.3. TOURISM

Tourism plays a vital role in terms of local economic development within the MMLM with an extensive range of tourism destinations and infrastructure, and a variety of linkages to the surrounding regions. Most of these facilities are located in the Waterberg Biosphere area in the northern parts of the MMLM. Following is a brief summary of some of the most salient features to be noted in this regard:

- Regarded as the gateway to the Waterberg, the Modimolle area is particularly known for its variety of outdoor recreation options, ranging from horse safaris, hiking and nature trails, to luxury hunting safaris.
- Bird watching at the internationally famous Nylsvlei Nature Reserve, where up to 200 species are easily spotted in the course of the day, also attracts many visitors to the area.
- The pleasant climate with hot summers and moderate winters makes Modimolle a year round holiday destination, only one and a half hours' drive from Johannesburg on the N1 to Zimbabwe and R33 to Botswana. The road from Bela-Bela to Modimolle along the R101 route offers both an alternative to the toll road and exceptional beauty and scenery.
- Historic sites in and around Modimolle include the J.G Strijdom House and Museum where the former statesman lived for twenty years and which has been declared a national monument, as well as places related to the Anglo Boer War concentration camp established here in 1901. Historic churches include the Reformed Church in Calvin Street, designed by Gerhard Moerdijk and built in 1929 and next to it, the oldest church building in Limpopo dating back to 1889, which has also been declared a national monument.
- Rail enthusiasts will enjoy the original locomotive used on the line between Pretoria and Modimolle after the line was completed in 1898, which now has pride of the place at the railway station. A ride on the luxury colonial train, the Nylsvlei Express to the nearby Boekenhout station also makes for a fun outing.
- Donkerpoort Dam, some 11 km northwest of the town on the R517 is a popular fishing spot for carp, bream and black bass. It is also a very popular spot.
- The Municipality does not have any multi-cultural event to attract tourist.
- The majority of tourists who account for bed nights are from Gauteng with sizeable foreign tourists also visiting the area (mostly for holidays rather than day tours).

Modimolle Mountain is a renowned conservation worthy and archaeologically important site in the Modimolle- Mookgophong Local Municipality. The Modimolle Mountain Tourism Development Initiative (MMTDI) is a proposed tourism anchor

project to be developed in this regard. The Mountain falls on the southern edge of the Nylsvlei wetland system, which is an internationally important Ramsar Wetland.

The municipality aims to set up the following to ensure an effective tourism strategy for the municipality:

- Municipality Tourism link (destination marketing committee, municipal website with municipality tourism destinations)
- Tourism marketing strategy
- Branding
- Touring signage
- Marketing tourism products
- Tourism association

Table 5.3: Tourism Sector and Challenges

Tourism Sector	Tourism Challenges
Guest houses-42	Poor branding and marketing
Bed and Bedroom-20	Lack of tourism information and research to support product development
Game Lodges-99	Lack of strategic land to support SMME's
Nature Reserves-14	Lack of documented history of local heritage
Game Farms-20	No Tourism strategy
	Lack of funding to support tourism initiatives

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

5.2.4. MANUFACTURING

The municipality towns are located close to the N1 (national highway) which provides local industries with a direct import and export link to Gauteng, Limpopo and other African countries. In terms of the municipal SDF there is potential for smaller industries in Mookgophong area, especially SMMEs and with proper planning this may become a thriving industry with the potential to create many employment opportunities. This possible development in the industrial sector will however, need pro-active intervention from both the public and private sector in order to encourage industrialists and entrepreneurs to invest in the area. There is, therefore a need for a dedicated industrial retention and regeneration strategy.

Municipality manufacturing industries

- Ceramic tile industry
- Naboom plastic
- Nylsteen brick company
- Bottled water factories
- Crocodile farms
- Spif Chicken producers
- Agro processing

Municipal Manufacturing Challenges

- No manufacturing retention and regeneration strategy
- No land for industrial development
- High rental cost for industries

5.2.5. MINING

Limited mining and quarrying activity occur in the central and eastern parts of the MMLM .Mining contributes far less than expected in the local economy of the Municipality in terms of GVA. However, this should not negate the fact that the Municipality is home to some mineral resources which, if properly harnessed, can act as catalyst for growth in sectors such as manufacturing and value adding.

Mining Challenges

- Non credible SLA's & SLP
- Lack of integration between the stakeholders and the municipalit

Local Economic Development Initiatives

The Municipality create jobs through these initiatives:

- Community Works Programme(CWP)
- Expanded Public Works programme (EPWP)
- NARSC jobs
- Other LED initiatives e.g SANRAL & RAL

Table 5.4: Institutions Supporting SMME's & Local Communities

Institutions	Services	Target
Cooperative Governance & Traditional Affairs (COGTA)	Community Work Programme	Local municipality
Cooperative Government Human Settlement & Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA)	Coordination support	Local municipality
Department of Forestry Fishery & Environment (DFFE)	Skills development	Local municipality
South African Local Government Association (SALGA)	Vouchers to purchase sewing materials For mask in order to address or reduce the spread of COVID-19 pandemic	Small Medium and Micro enterprises
Waterberg District Municipality (WDM)	Coordinating Support	Local municipality
Lephalale TVET College	Vouchers Entrepreneurial skills development	Small Medium and Micro enterprises
National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)	Business consultancy, market linkages, business management training programme, youth co-operative development programme	Youth owned enterprises
Department of Small Business and Development (DSBD)	-Promote entrepreneurship -Unlock potential through better business environment -Promote more competitive small businesses -Provide access to finance	Small Medium and Micro Enterprise and cooperatives
Limpopo Economic Development Environment & Tourism (LEDET)	-Enterprise development -Access to Finance, -Business advice and business support, -Tourism development, Marketing & Promotion	Small Medium and Micro Enterprise and cooperatives
Department of Agriculture and Rural Development (DARDLR)	Developing agricultural value chain Providing agricultural inputs	Commercial farmers

	Monitoring production and consumption Facilitating comprehensive rural development Ensuring food security	Emerging farmers and cooperatives
Mining (quarries) Industry	Job creation Social Labour Plans or Corporate responsibilities	Affected communities

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

Table 5.5: State of Local Skills Base

Sector	Scars Skills	No
Mining	Technician	26
	Engineers	40
	Artisans	121
	Machine Operator	65
Tourism	Tour operators	88
	Tour guides	67
	Destination marketers	28
Agriculture	Inspectors	39
	Agricultural Engineers	11
	Veterinary Medicines	4
Total Number of Skills Base in MMLM		489

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

Table 5.6: LED Existing Projects and Programme

No.	Project Name	Area / Locality	Nature Of Project	Type Of Project	No.
1.	Face Upliftment of Vaalwater Town (Market stalls)	Vaalwater town	Infrastructure	Informal Trading	0
2.	Alma Hydroponic Project	Alma Village	Infrastructure	Agriculture	2
3.	Completion of Modimolle Taxi Rank Market Stalls	Modimolle Town	Infrastructure	Informal Trading	In-compl ement

4.	Upgrade of Modimolle Beehive Incubation Centre	Phagame ng Township	Infrastructure	SMMEs Incubation centre	9
5.	Development of WATRAP 4HA Area	Phagame ng Township	Infrastructure	Agriculture (Horticulture & Poultry Production)	8
6.	Development of WATRAP Area	Phagame ng Township	Infrastructure	Agriculture (Horticulture)	50
7.	Phagameng Baruwa Kgomo Agricultural Cooperative	Modimolle Town	Livestock	Agriculture	14
8.	Modimolle-Cooperative (Dipudi Projects)	Modimolle Industrial	Goat Farming	Agriculture	7
9.	Modimolle Beehive Incubation	Phagame ng	Smme Development	Light industrial	10
10.	Baswa Itekeng Agricultural Cooperative	Mookgoph ong	Crop and Vegetable	Agriculture	5
11.	Land Care Project	Modimolle	Control of Invasive alien Plants	Environment al	50
12.	Development of Modimolle-Mountain Projects	Infrastruct ure (Main offices)	Infrastructure	Tourism	Incom plete
13.	Croc Garden (Crocodile farm)	Mookgoph ong	Infrastructure	Heritage	7

Source: LED Mmlm 2025

5.2.7. LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

- Lack of budget for LED projects and programs.
- No LED and tourism strategy
- Lack of capacity of municipal infrastructure to support LED
- Inadequate land for LED projects
- Lack of integration with sector departments

Table 5.7: Jobs Created Through EPWP & CWP 2024/2025

Number	Project Name	Status	Total Work Opportunities Created
1	Paving of Phagameng Ext 10 Main Road and Intersection	Construction	16
2	Electrification of Phomolong Ext 12	Construction	6
3	Refurbishment of the Donkerpoort WTW	Construction	14
4	Augmentation of Water Supply in Modimolle	Construction	12
5	Augmentation of Water Supply in Mookgophong	Construction	22
6	Construction of Internal Streets and Stormwater Control for Phagameng Ext 5 & 6	Construction	15
7	Construction of Internal Streets and Stormwater Control for Phagameng Ext 8	Design	0
8	Paving of Phagameng Ext 10 Main Road	Completed	71
9	Modimolle New Substation Phase 4	Construction	06
10	Upgrading of the Industrial Sewer Outfall (Phase 2)	Completed	12
11	Refurbishment of the Donkerpoort WTW	Completed	08
12	Paving of Phagameng Ext 10 Main Road	Construction	49
13	Upgrading of Mookgophong Sports Stadium	Construction	21

14	Phavement of Ext 5 & 6	Constructi on	15
15	MMLM Phephafatsa	Complete d	72
16	Rehabilitation and Regravelling of floods and storm	Complete d	36
17	Security	On-going	94
EPWP Job Created			469
CWP Job Created			1 126

Source: Mmlm LED 2024

CHAPTER 6: KPA 4 FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT

The Regulations apply to all municipalities and municipal entities and indicate its applicability and relevance to each specific municipal environment while accommodating organizational uniqueness and structural differences.

The Municipality is not financially viable due to the fact that;

- The municipality is heavily indebted to a lots of creditors such as Eskom and
- Low collection of revenue

However, the municipality has implemented financial recovery plan to address issues mentioned above.

6.3.2. BUDGET RELATED POLICIES:

The Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has several budget-related policies in place, including those for tariff, rates, indigent management, budget management, debt provision, and virement. Other policies cover inventory, credit control, banking, and supply chain management. The policies can be summarized as follows:

- Tariff Policy

- Rates Policy
- Indigent Management Policy
- Budget Management Policy
- Debt Provision and write off Policy
- Budget Principles Policy
- Virement Policy
- Inventory Policy
- Credit Control and Debt Collection Policy
- Banking and Investment Policy
- Immovable Asset Management Policy
- Supply Chain Policy
- External Loans Policy
- Movable Asset Management Policy

6.3.3. REVENUE MANAGEMENT

The Municipality has an established revenue unit that drives all activities pertaining to revenue generation, including the implementation of the property rates policy as a mechanism to ensure revenue collection. However, due to the challenges relating to the implementation of the property rates policy, new revenue collection streams have to be identified and pursued.

Revenue Management Systems

- **Billing System** - the municipality has an effective billing system; however management has to guide against the deterioration of the income base.
- **Debt Collection** - The municipality is executing credit control and debt collection in-house to collect outstanding moneys overdue to the municipality for municipal rates and services
- **Revenue Enhancement Strategy** - The municipality has a revenue enhancement strategy to address revenue collection.
- **Credit Control Systems** - The municipality has a credit control and debt collection policy which outlines methods and procedures for debt collection in terms of non-compliance.

The implementation of Property Rates is regulated in terms of the Municipal Property Rates Act, and the regulations issued by the Department of Co-operative Governance. These regulations came into effect on 1 July 2009 and prescribe the rate ratio for the non-residential categories, public service infrastructure and agricultural properties relative to residential properties to be 0, 25:1. The implementation of these regulations was done in previous

budget processes and the Property Rates Policy of the Municipality has been amended accordingly.

Supply Chain Committees

- Bid specification committee
- Bid evaluation committee
- Bid adjudication committee

6.3.5. CHALLENGES TO MAINTAIN FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND COMPLIANCE

- Poor Revenue Collection
- Most of the residents are indigent and tremendous task to monitor the status of indigent households
- Qualified audit opinion for the 2020/2021, 2021/2022 and 2022/2023 Adverse
- Lack of compliance with Supply Chain Policy
- Over-charging on services rendered by suppliers
- Resistance to accept responsibilities to maintain asset management within the Municipality
- Shortfalls in project and financial management skills
- Demand on service delivery without adequate funding
- Noncompliance with legislation and budget related policies

CHAPTER 7: KPA 5 GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

7.3. FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL COMMITTEE

The municipal Council and Mayoral Committee were established guided by Chapters 3 and 4 sections 18 and 79 of the Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998, respectively. The Mayor chairs the Executive Council (EXCO) meetings. **All Committees have been established and are functional.**

Table 7.1: Section 79 Committees/ Portfolio Committees

	Portfolio Committee	Key Focus Areas
1	Strategic Planning and Economic Development	Integrated Development Plan, Spatial Planning/ Land Use Management Geographic Information System, Local economic development, Property Management, Human Settlement, Agricultural development, tourism development, Performances management system, business planning, Housing infrastructure, Service delivery and budget implementation Plan
2	Budget and Treasury	Budget monitoring, , Financial policies and regulations, grants, tax, levies, income ,debtor management, budget, logistics, payroll, insurances, Loans, and investment, cash flow, assets management, public relation
3	Social and Community Services	Cemeteries, funeral parlors and crematoria, environmental and waste management, health, protection services, emergency services, sport and culture, security services, disaster management, cemetery records management services, Solid waste
4	Corporate Services	Administration, secretariat, legal, Council support, policies and procedures, facilities management communications, capacity building ,human resources, marketing, marketing, intergovernmental relations, information and communication technology, fleet management, Public participation, ward committee
5	Technical Services	Water, Sanitation, Electricity, Roads and Buildings, projects management unit

Table 7.2: Section 79 Committees Chairpersons and Members

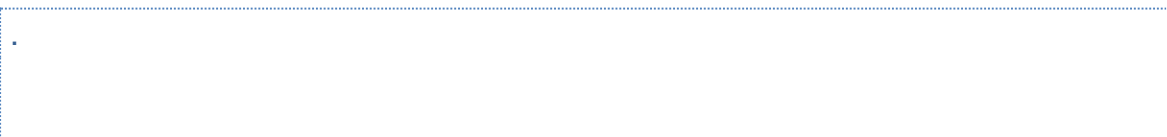
Portfolio Committee	Chairperson And Members
Finance	<p>ClIr SM Motsomane (Chairperson)</p> <p>ClIr P du Plessis</p> <p>ClIr W Botes</p> <p>ClIr R Mahoro</p> <p>ClIr MM Maswanganyi</p>
Technical Services	<p>ClIr E Ramogale (Chairperson)</p> <p>ClIr DS Motshwene</p> <p>ClIr CJ Pretorius</p> <p>ClIr R Mahoro</p> <p>ClIr MM Mothabela</p>
Strategic Planning And Economic Development	<p>ClIr J Mpedi (Chairperson)</p> <p>ClIr W Botes</p> <p>ClIr P Du Plessis</p> <p>ClIr R Mahoro</p> <p>ClIr MM Mothabela</p>
Social And Community Services	<p>ClIr K Moima (Chairperson)</p> <p>ClIr AS Wagener</p> <p>ClIr CJ Pretorius</p> <p>ClIr R Mahoro</p> <p>ClIr MM Mothabela</p>
Corporate Services	<p>ClIr J Majoko (Chairperson)</p> <p>ClIr CJ Pretorius</p> <p>ClIr SP Mafuna</p> <p>ClIr MM Maswanganyi</p> <p>ClIr R Mahoro</p>

Table 7.3: Executive Roles and Ethics Committees

Executive Committee Composition	Roles and Ethics Committee
Cllr MA Mboweni (Chairperson)	Cllr PJ Manaka (Chairperson)
Cllr HP Louw	Cllr DS Motshwene
Cllr JP Prinsloo	Cllr CJ Pretorius
Cllr LW Monyela	Cllr E Ramogale
	Cllr SM Motsomane
	Cllr MM Mothabela

Table 7.4: Audit, Risk and MPAC Committees

Audit and Performance Committee Members	Risk Management Committee	MPAC Committee
Mr V Mthombeni (Chairperson)	Mr Mokwele Moloto\ (Chairperson)	Cllr Shokane(Chairperson) J
Mrs M Le Roux (Member)	All Section 56 Managers	Cllr MM Kekana
Mrs LPV Malumbete-Baloyi (Member)	Chief Audit Executive	Cllr AP Mathabathe
Mrs N Laubscher (Member)	Manager Communications	Cllr PJ Manaka
-	Risk Manangement Unit	Cllr MM Mashishi
-	National Treasury Advisor	Cllr MS Louw
-	Provincial Treasury	Cllr D Phalane
-	Coghsta	-



3.2. AUDIT & PERFORMANCE AUDIT COMMITTEE

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC) was established in terms of section 166 of the MFMA. The primary role of the committee is to advise political office bearers, municipal council and the management of the municipality. The municipal council has appointed four independent individuals, including the chairperson, to perform both the audit committee and performance audit committee functions.

The Audit Committee meetings are held on a quarterly basis to execute the functions as stipulated in the MFMA and the Audit Committee Charter. The Audit Committee is functional. The committee liaises with the Internal Audit unit which reports functionally to them and administratively to the Municipal Manager. The committee has approved Risk Based Internal Audit Plan to ensure compliance with MFMA

7.3.2. FINANCIAL MISCONDUCT BOARD

- Chief Audit Executive
- Member of Audit Committee
- Director Corporate Services
- 1 representative from Provincial or National Treasury
- An additional person to be appointed by the municipal council as and when needed by the board

Table 7.5: Auditor General Opinion

Auditor General's Reports	2020/2021	2021/2022	2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/25
Modimolle- Mookgophong Opinions	Qualified	Qualified	Adverse	Qualified	Qualified
Source: Auditor General South Africa					

7.4. MUNICIPAL PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE (MPAC)

(INDICATE THE FUNCTIONALITY OF THE UNIT AND CHALLENGES AS THERE IS A TABLE ABOUT THE COMMITTEE)

Section 79A of the Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998, as amended, provides for the establishment of a Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC) to, amongst others:

- Review the Auditor-General’s reports and comments of the management committee and the audit committee and make recommendations to the municipal council.
- Review internal audit reports together with comments from the management committee and the audit committee and make recommendations to the municipal council.
- Initiate and develop the oversight report on annual reports contemplated in section 129 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act.
- Attend to and make recommendations to the municipal council on any matter referred to it by the municipal council, executive committee, a committee of the council, a member of this committee, a councillor and the municipal manager.
- On its own initiative, subject to the direction of the municipal council, investigate and report to the municipal council on any matter affecting the municipality.

In accordance with Section 129 (5) of the Municipal Finance Management Act, Council of Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has adopted the “Guideline for Establishment of Municipal Public Accounts Committees” (“Guideline”)

MPAC Challenges

- Delay in submission of reports to committee members.
- Budget has not been allocation for MPAC.
- Lack of compliance from the managers.
- Unavailability of working tools.

7.5.2. SPECIAL PROGRAMME IN THE WORKPLACE (GENDER, YOUTH AND DISABILITY)

The Special Projects Unit mandate is to promote, mainstream, advocate, facilitate, coordinate, monitor and evaluate the realization of the rights of the designated groups.

The Unit specifically focuses on vulnerable groups in the community such as women; people living with disability; people infected and affected by HIV and AIDS; the elderly and young people. Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality to partner with sector department to promote issues related to gender & youth issues.

7.5.3. PROGRAMMES FOR GENDER AND YOUTH (TO BE REFLECTED IN MAYORS PROGRAMS)

- Women Celebration
- Youth Summit
- Elderly programme
- Mayoral cups
- Grade 12 Programme

7.5.4. CDW PROGRAMME

Community Development Workers are multi skilled employees of the CoGHSTA placed at the municipality at various wards to ensure that bottlenecks of service delivery are lubricated and communities get services. Their role include amongst others, working with the municipality after conducting door to door, ward profiling and referring cases to other government departments.

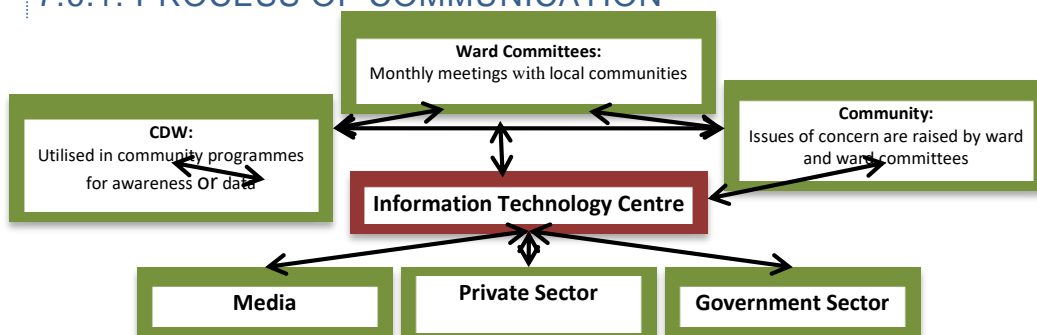
The following challenges were identified:

- No memorandum of understanding signed between local municipalities and CoGHSTA.
- Limited resources provided to CDWs to execute functions.

7.6. PROCESSES OF COMMUNICATION

A communication unit has been established its role is to ensure that there is proper internal and external communication. The municipality has an approved communication strategy in place which is reviewed annually.

7.6.1. PROCESS OF COMMUNICATION



7.7. RISK MANAGEMENT UNIT

The principal goal of Municipality 's risk management process is to support management decisions through achieving its objectives and responding to threats by reducing complexity, increasing objectivity and identifying important decision factors. Since the Modimolle Mookgophong Local Municipality uses automated information technology (IT) systems to process their information for better support of their missions, risk management plays a critical role in protecting their organization's information assets from IT-related risk. Therefore, Municipality;s risk management process should be treated primarily as an essential management function, as a whole.

The Municipality is committed to ensure risk management is an integral part of the management function and will include a risk management competency in its department manager's individual performance objectives. The review process may identify areas of opportunity, such as where effective risk management can be turned into a saving or opportunity.

Interms of the MFMA, the Municipal Mnager holds overall accountability for the Risk Management Unit, as they are the accounting officer responsible for ensuring sound governmence, financial management and compliance. This responsibility is delegated to management and, appropriate to their levels, to each employee in the Municipality.

7.7.3. Risk Management Challenges

Limited Resources

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality operates under a tight budget and staff constraints, making it difficult to allocate sufficient resources to manage the risk effectively. (Manager Risk to develop strategic risk challenges pls consult her)

Table 7.7.: Municipal Top Nine Risks

Municipal Top Nine Risks	
SR1	Failure to attract investors and limited economic Development.
SR2	Ageing Infrastructure (Energy, Roads, water & Sanitation Networks)
SR3	Cyber-attack
SR4	Poor liquidity
SR5	High unauthorised expenditure, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure
SR6	Negative audit outcome
SR7	Theft and Vandalizing of Municipal Assets
SR8	High Vacancy Rate
SR9	Service Delivery Interruptions

Table 7.8: Cross Cutting Needs

Cross Cutting Needs		
■ Formalisation of Informal settlements	■ Allocation of RDP houses/low cost houses	■ Paving of internal streets and Regravelling of Streets
■ Relocation of landfill site	■ Provision of tittle deeds	■ Refurbishment of Ablution Block at Stadiums and cemeteries
■ Construction of sporting facilities in all townships	■ Construction of new clinics/mobile clinic	■ Job Creation
■ Installation of high mast lights and street lights	■ Fencing and sanitation at cemeteries	■ Installation of network towers
■ Electrification of all households	■ Water connection on all households	■ Construction of storm water management systems/control
■ Building of School	■ Construction of new schools	■ Construction and/or renovation of community halls
■ Construction of Over-Bridge on R101road	■ Establishment of Youth Skills Development Programme Centre	

Source: Mmlm 2025

Table 7.9: Needs per Wards

Ward Number	1
Main Settlements	Vaalwater (Ext 3, 4, 5 and Half of Ext 2) The whole of Vaalwater Town
Population	N/A
Ward Councillor	Moima KM
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	George Mfisa
Community Development Worker	Vacant
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Relocation of landfill site	
-Paving of internal streets and side walk in main streets	
-Allocation of street names	
-Installation of stop signs in various streets	
-Water reticulation in other extensions	
-Construction of storm water management systems/control	
-Installation of Water taps in every household	
-Bulk infrastructure and household connections to all households	
-Need for high mast lights and street lights	
-Electrification of households in some extensions	
-Completion of sport centre	
-Development of Vaalwater town	
-Municipal bills to be corrected	
-Need for Mobile Clinic	
-Allocation of skip bins in every street	
-Refurbishment of ablution blocks at the taxi rank and community hall	
-Job opportunities	
-Need for rehabilitation centre	

Ward Number	2
Main Settlements	Alma Settlement, Farms Around Alma (Tretsom, Waterberg, Bosdraai, Rankinspaas, Doornfontein, Heiningfontein, Driehoek, Groenfontein, Ea Davidson, Nylzyn Oog)

Population	N/A
Ward Councillor	Majoko J
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Cate Mafa
Community Development Worker	Vacant
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Allocation of low cost houses	
-Tittle deeds to be reviewed	
-Building of new municipal offices	
-Develop church and serviced stands	
-Paving of internal roads	
-Paving of access road from Alma to Mohlaka-Motala	
-Construction of bridges between township and Alma town	
-Need for new water meter	
-Sewer connection for bulk infrastructure	
-Household sewer connections to be fixed	
-Construction of storm water management systems/control	
-Electrification of high mast lights at new settlement	
-Electrification of new settlements	
-Development of Park and Community Sports facility	
-Establishment of EMS facilities	
-Installation of cell phone network	
-Building of Community Hall	
-Need for Library	
-Allocation of one municipal vehicle for municipal employees in Alma	
-Job Opportunities/Learnership	
-Municipal bills to be corrected	
-Municipality to facilitate donations from Nyl-stene	
-Fencing of ablution facilities at the cemetery	
-Construction of Police office in Alma township	

Ward Number	3
Main Settlements	Ext 1, Half 2 And 6
Population	None
Ward Councillor	Motsomane Sm
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional

Ward Committee Secretary	Mfisa Rhinah
Community Development Worker	Hans Matlou
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Need for middle income stands	
-Allocation for low cost houses	
-Municipal bills to be corrected	
-Relocation of landfill site	
-Paving of internal streets and side walk in main streets	
-Allocation of street names	
-Installation of stop signs in various streets	
-Water reticulation in other extensions	
-Installation of water taps in every household	
-Drilling of borehole next to sports facility	
-Construction of storm water management systems/control	
-Bulk infrastructure and household connections to all households	
-Need for high mast lights and street lights	
-Electrification of households in some extensions	
-Building of toilet at the cemetery and paving of new graveside	
-Completion of sport centre and park	
-Refurbishment of old community hall	
-Need for Mobile Clinic	
-Development of Vaalwater town	
-Allocation of skip bins in every street	
-Refurbishment of ablution blocks at the taxi rank and community hall	
-Correction of zoning of business properties	
-Need for rehabilitation centre	

Ward Number	4
Main Settlements	Ext 2, 3, 5 and 6
Population	None
Ward Councillor	Ramogale E
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Klaas Malesela
Community Development Worker	Vacant

Summary of Issues Raised

- Formalisation of informal settlements
- Provision of title deeds
- Electrification of households in some extensions
- Need for High mast lights
- Households sewer connections in ext 2,5,6 and new houses
- Need for clean water
- Construction of storm water management systems/control
- Paving of main & internal streets
- Household water connection in all informal settlements
- Replace faulty electricity meter boxes
- Installation of high mast lights in extension
- Completion of Sport Stadium
- Need for disability desk and accessibility to public transport
- Allocation of skills development

Ward Number	5
Main Settlements	Mookgophong Town
Population	None
Ward Councillor	Louw M
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Van Aswegen Susan
Community Development Worker	Vacant

Summary of Issues Raised

- Upgrade Road D600 to Constantia
- Need for Weigh Bridge at the Entrance from Mokopane
- Repair and Re-Seal all Tar Roads
- Construction of Storm Water Management Systems/Control
- Upgrade pipeline between the purification works and the main reservoir and install pressure valves
- Connect the planned Water Supply Network of Die Oog
- Equip 15 boreholes to be functional
- Refurbish the old and new purification plant
- Upgrading and repairing of the main distribution lines on all lines
- Completion of Storm Water Project at the Main Grave Yard
- Upgrade Current Graveyard
- Fence the Old Location Cemetery
- Die Oog Landfill Site Need to be licensed and regulated
- Erect Market Stalls In Strategic Areas

-Repair and Re-Seal all tar roads
-Repair and maintain streets names and road signs
-Monitoring of illegal duping on all vacant spaces

Ward Number	6
Main Settlements	Mandela, Jassper Ext 13, Kekana And Sediba Street
Population	
Ward Councillor	Mpedi J
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Jan Matlou
Community Development Worker	Vacant

Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Allocation for low cost houses (RDP)	
-Need for clean water	
-Paving of all internal streets	
-Water reticulation at new extensions	
-Allocation of water meters in every household	
-Provision of water connections on all households	
-Households sewer connections to be fixed	
-Electrification of households in some extensions	
-All household to be electrified	
-All high mast lights to be energised	
-Need for high mast lights and street lights	
-Building of new clinics in other extensions	
-Investigate, registration and zone correctly of businesses properties	
-Illegal mining to be monitored	
-Job opportunities	
-Need for community hall and library	
-Relocation of town planning division to municipal main building	
-Investigate, registration and zone correctly of businesses properties	
-Need for working equipment and protective clothing for municipal officials	

Ward Number	7
Main Settlements	Ext 4, Ext 6, Pietinyana and Old Phagameng
Population	

Ward Councillor	Mboweni A
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Nkwinika Tebogo
Community Development Worker	Kobela Sithole
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Allocation of low cost houses	
-Provision of tittle deeds in every households	
-Need for clean water	
-Provision of water connections on all households	
-Households sewer connections to be fixed	
-Building of ablution block next to town post office	
-Refurbishment of ablution blocks at the taxi rank and cemetery	
-Allocation of tittle deeds	
--Need for business stands	
-Need for market stalls	
-Need for new 24hrs clinic	
-Replacement of asbestos roofs at every households	
-Refurbishment and allocation of security guards at Ephraim Mogale Stadium	
- Refurbished of Phagameng/Peter Nchabeleng Community hall	
-All street lights to be electrified/installed LED lights	
-Building of new library in the township	
-Customer municipal debts to be written off	
-Allocation of offices and support for NGO's	
-Registered NPO's to support community with developments	
-Municipality to complete Jay Naidoo project	
-Municipal town side walk to be cleared from hawkers and business shops	
-Job opportunities	
-Facilitation of CSI funding donations	
-Refurbishment of Sports Ground	
-Allocation of bursary to community youth	
-Sports facility to be refurbished and be equipped with all sporting activities equipment's	

Ward Number	8
Main Settlements	Ext 8, 9 and 11
Population	
Ward Councillor	Mahoro RJ

Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Chisi Lucas
Community Development Worker	Sina Molomo
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Identify land for middle class housing for development	
-Identify stand for churches	
-Bulk water needed and additional boreholes	
-Industrial area sewerage system upgrade	
-All street lights to be electrified and installed LED lights	
-Paving of all internal streets	
-Allocation of street names	
-Building of 24hours clinic	
-Job opportunities	
-Allocation of tittle deeds	
-Electrification of households in some extensions	
-Informal settlement to be provided with water and electricity	
-Provision of water connections on all households	
-Construction of storm water control systems	
-Develop multi-purpose sports centre	
-Building of community halls	

Ward Number	9
Main Settlements	Phomolong Ext 4, Ext 8 and Die Oog
Population	
Ward Councillor	Mathabatha
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Dinah KgomoSotho
Community Development Worker	Sarah Tsebe
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Identify land for middle class housing development	

-Construction of storm water management systems/control
-Paving of access road and inner roads in all extension
-Building of a bridge in Ext 8, on the road to the cemetery
-Allocation of RDP houses
-Building of community halls
-Develop walkover bridge over on N1 Ext 4 and Ext 8
-Installation of water taps in every household
-Erecting high mass light in informal settlement
-Need for high mast lights and street lights
-Fencing of cemetery next to N1
-Refurbishment of ablution blocks at the cemetery
-Develop multi-purpose sports centre
-Building of community halls
- Construction of school
-Construction of TVET college
-Construction of storm water management systems/control
-Paving of access road and inner roads in all extension
-Job opportunities

Ward Number	10
Main Settlements	Ext 1 and Old Location
Population	
Ward Councillor	Manaka Pj
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Mashao Elizabeth
Community Development Worker	Thabo Monama
Summary of Issues Raised	
-Demolition of old hostel	
-Establishment of Sports Council	
-Need for Youth Development Centre and Disability Desk	
-Job opportunities	
Paving of road to the cemetery and fencing of the cemetery	
-Development of Sports Grounds	
-Identify land for middle class housing development	
-Construction of storm water management systems/control	
-Paving of access road and inner roads in all extension	
-Repair and maintain walk over bridge on N1 high way	
-Fencing, storm water control and paving of roads to cemetery	

-Need for high mast lights and street lights

Ward Number	11
Main Settlements	Ext 7 Marapong And Old Town
Population	
Ward Councillor	Dayimani M
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Moaga Leah
Community Development Worker	Mzion Tsia
<u>Summary of Issues Raised</u>	
-Formalisation of informal settlements	
-Identify land for middle class housing development	
-Allocation of low cost houses	
-Construction of storm water management systems/control	
-Sewerage reticulation	
-Replace asbestos water pipes	
-Job opportunities	
-Paving of access road and inner roads	
-Investigate and implement solution for electricity supply upgrading	
-Need for high mast lights and street lights	
-Road to new landfill site must be paved	
-Clean up the whole Nile river through Modimolle town	
-Implement security measures at sports facility and community hall (Peter Nchabeleng Hall)	
-Build of ablution block opposite Post Office complex and maintenance of existing ablution blocks	
Ward Number	12
Main Settlements	Kokanje, Koro-Creek, Correctional Services, Modi-Mall And Thabo Mbeki Street
Population	
Ward Councillor	Botel WL
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Pretorius Piet
Community Development Worker	Vacant

Summary of Issues Raised
-Refurbishment of council chamber
-Refurbishment of OR Tambo Hall
-Demolish abandoned buildings around town
-Provision of security personnel at the old landfill site
-Paving of all roads/Streets around town
-Re-tar important intersections
-Upgrading of sewerage network - especially Koro Creek area and Church street
-Fixing of Dreihekke boreholes
-Upgrade electricity ring-feed system
-Upgrade electrical substation
-Refurbishment of town library

Ward Number	13
Main Settlements	Ext 9,10 and 12
Population	
Ward Councillor	Shokane J
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Ramatshinga Farisani
Community Development Worker	Johanna Molefe

Summary of Issues Raised
-Formalisation of informal settlements
-Allocation of temporary communal taps on every street
-Regravelling of streets at Ext 2
-Rezoning of houses that are next to R101 road in Ext 12
-Identify land for middle class housing development
-Allocation of low cost houses (RDP)
-Construction of storm water management systems/control
-Water reticulation in all extensions
-Allocation of temporary communal taps on every street
-Installation of water taps in every household
-Sewer connection for bulk infrastructure
-Need for high mast lights and street lights
-Allocation of Electricity connections in every household
-Paving of access road and inner roads in all extension/ Road maintenance
-Allocation of street names
-Waste removal in every household

-Closing of dumping site
-Fencing of Borrow pit next to R101/Closing of borrow pit
-Development of over head Bridge on R101
-Construction of community hall in Ext 10
-Need for 24hours Clinic/Health care centre

Ward Number	14
Main Settlements	Ext 3, 8, Vlakfontein, Crecy, Tuinplaas and Roedtan
Population	
Ward Councillor	Kekana MM
Ward Committee Functionality	Functional
Ward Committee Secretary	Malete Jim
Community Development Worker	Vacant

Summary of Issues Raised
-Formalisation of informal settlements
-Identify land for middle class housing development
-Establishment of Youth Skills Development Programme Centre
-Municipality to adopt Green Energy on municipal buildings
- Provision of title deeds in every households
-Land for Grazing land
-Installation of cell phone network
-Allocation of low cost houses
-Refurbishment of community hall
- Allocation of temporary communal taps on every street
-Need for mobile clinic
-Electrification of Stadium
-Job opportunities for youth
-Provision of security personnel at the cemetery
-Construction of storm water management systems/control
-Paving road at the cemetery
-Need for satellite library
-Upgrade of sports facility, ablution block, drill borehole
-Upgrading of park
-Refurbishment of toilets at the community hall, sport stadium and cemetery
-Identify land for a church
-Provide office space for NGO

CHAPTER 8: KPA 6 MUNICIPAL INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION

8.1. INTRODUCTION

The delivery of services to communities relies highly on institutional capacity and organisational development level of the municipality.

Table 8.1: Institutional Overview

Department	Overview	Sub-function
Municipal Manager	Overall management of the municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal Audit • Risk Management • Area Managers
Corporate Services	Corporate support services play a vital role in the performance and developmental role of the Municipality as it provides a supportive function to all departments, Council, executive committee, portfolios, councillors, and officials.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Legal Services • Information Technology • Human Resources Management • Human Resources Development • Council Secretariat and Support Services • Communication • Call Centre • Institutional Performance Management
Technical Services	<p>Planning, provision and maintenance of water and sanitation infrastructure, including roads, storm water and building control.</p> <p>It provides an effective electrical service to all consumers of the municipality ensuring that all networks are well maintained and that new projects are completed to acceptable standards and within set time frames.</p> <p>It ensures that all communities have access to electricity.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water & Sanitation • Roads & Storm Water • Operations & maintenance • Electrification

Department	Overview	Sub-function
Spatial Planning and Economic Development	<p>Planning and development services is responsible for the development of an integrated development plan that facilitates economic growth, alleviate poverty, and addresses basic needs through an inclusive stakeholder-driven process.</p> <p>It ensures proper control of spatial planning and land use management within the municipal area.</p> <p>It supports in the monitoring of the provision of quality and adequate housing and rural sanitation to the residents of the municipality.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Integrated Development Planning (IDP) • Local Economic Development and Tourism • Planning • Housing • Building Inspectorate • Property Management
Budget and Treasury	<p>The Finance section is responsible for ensuring the smooth running of finances, assets, investments, and liabilities of the municipality.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Budget and Treasury • Revenue • Expenditure • Supply Chain Management • Assets
Community Services	<p>Community services is responsible for municipal waste management, environmental health, parks & recreational and library services.</p> <p>Traffic and emergency services is responsible for municipal emergency services, regulate traffic, and licensing services.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waste Management • Parks & Recreational Services • Library Services • Cemetery • Security • Traffic and Licences • Fire

8.2. VACANCY RATE

Number of Filled Positions :525
 Number of Vacant Positions :58
Total Number of Positions :583

Table 8.3: Age Statistics

Age	25-35	36-40	41-55	56-60	61-75
Modimolle-Mookgophong	80	58	342	30	15
Grand Total	525				

Source: MMLM Organisational Structure 2025

8.3. MAYORAL DESK (GENDER, DISABILITY AND YOUTH)

8.3.1. CHALLENGES FACING WOMEN: CONSULT MAYORS OFFICE TO DEVELOP PROGRAMS

- Abuse
- Opportunities for women in the workplace
- Lack of decent health facilities for giving birth
- Access of funding to open businesses

8.3.2. CHALLENGES FOR YOUNG PEOPLE

- Drug abuse
- Struggling to pass grade 12
- Mal-nutrition
- Sanitary towels for girls at schools
- Homeless children
- Child-headed households
- School clothing and schools in the winter months

8.3.3. CHALLENGES FOR THE OLD AGE

- The poor state of the old age facilities used by our elderly
- Department of Social Development Grant that is very little
- Transport is a major problem to move the elderly around

8.3.4. CHALLENGES FOR SPECIAL GROUP

- Participation of women, children, youth, elderly and people infected and affected by HIV/AIDS is still limited to the establishment of forums dealing with the group specific issues.
- No mainstreaming/implementation of people with disability in municipal employment equity plan.
- Establishment of education and skills development for people living with disability i.e. awareness campaigns.

The Human Resources Management unit is to prioritise:

- The recruitment and selection process.
- Development of employee in terms of performance management systems
- Management of time registers
- Submission of Employment Equity plan report in terms of Department of Labour requirement

Activities

- To develop the Human Resources strategy
- To develop and adopt institutional policies
- To administer time management system
- To ensure adherence of EE plan

8.4.1. WORKPLACE SKILLS PLAN (ENGAGE RELEVANT UNIT TO DEVELOP WORKPLACE SKILLS TRAINING PLAN)

Workplace Skills Plan is developed annually to identify skills needs and to close skills gaps. Annual Training Report must be submitted to LGSETA in April and monthly and quarterly Implementation report of Workplace Skills Plan and challenges of non-achievement. Skills Development seeks to improve productivity and lower staff turnover. It also seeks to equip employees with knowledge, skills and will results in improved services and maximum performance output which will add value back to the organization.

8.4.2. OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

The Occupational Health and safety (OHS) annual plan has been developed to support municipal strategic directions in the management of OHS. The key results areas have been identified through the site inspection conducted every month in the area of injury prevention and legislative compliance and a commitment to the Occupational Health and Safety continuous improvement.

Table 8.5: Occupational Health and Safety (implementation Plan must be updated consult relevant Unit)

Key results area	Responsibility	Time frame
<p>1. Encourages management to participate in the OHS matters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arrange OHS training for Managers 	Safety Officer	30 October 2025
<p>2. Develop and implement OHS policy</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Management with the help of the safety officer or competent person with knowledge of OHS will help to establish the policy 	Safety Officer Management	Completed
<p>3. Reduce of Workplace Injury and Diseases</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appointments of safety representative, section 16(1)&2 • Analyses injury data and develop target programme to address sprain and strain injuries • Develop and implement an online hazard and incident reporting system. • Develop and implement drive safe programme to encourage all municipal drivers to comply with traffic safety. • Develop and implement a communication program to improve early detection of injuries and illness • Establish a risk assessment model to be used in identify the risk. 	Safety Officer Safety Officer Safety Officer / Fleet Officer Safety Officer and Fleet officer Safety Officer , Safety representative and Human resource	Completed • Ongoing • In progress awaiting SALGA to develop the system • Ongoing • Ongoing • Completed
<p>4. Improve Risk Management Processes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do risk assessment with the help of the professionals e.g. NOSA • Implement an online risk assessment data base across the municipal departments within Modimolle-Mookgophong the generic risk assessment templates. 	Safety Officer /HR	• 2024/2025 financial year

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide target risk assessment management training information to all supervisors. • establish risk management performance measure : Ensure that all employees are attending periodic medical surveillance 		
<p>5. Increase hazard reporting and elimination of hazards</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Track and report outstanding corrective actions for incidents and audits. • On monthly basis inspections are done to report and notify the department involve of the Hazards identified. 	<p>OHS safety committee/Safety Officer</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monthly
<p>6. Continuously improve OHS management.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue to align OHS management with organisational structure • Hazards identified should be addressed and come up with mitigations by managers whom their divisions are affected to avoid contravention OHSA • Tools of trade should be given to safety officer and OHS committee to eliminate hazards • Review all documents used for safety purpose • Attend all safety meeting to improve the safe working environment and information sharing e.g. Safety forums. • Functional OHS committee 	<p>Management team Safety Officer /HR Team</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2024/2025 financial year • Ongoing • 2024/2025 • Ongoing • Quarterly and as and when required

8.4.3. COMPLAINT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Municipality has a complaints management system which is functional and it responds to complaints and complements from the community, currently the municipality has a call centre which is operational and the call centre is operational for 24hrs from the 1st of July 2021.

Priorities

- The establishment of grievances procedures in accordance with the prescripts of the Constitution and Labour Relations Act.
- Deal with all municipal litigations, legal suites and interdicts.
- Handle all Service Level Agreements and Contracts between the municipality and individuals and also including other organizations.

Activities

- Handle all disciplinary hearings for the employer
- Deal with all the legal processes relating to litigations by individuals and organizations against the municipality as well as interdicts by the municipality against its clients
- Review all drafted By-Laws within the municipality to ensure none is in contrast with the constitution
- Develop Service Level Agreements, Contracts, Leases and Memorandums of Understandings between individuals, organizations and the municipality
- Monitor and evaluate the compliance to such SLAs, Contracts, Leases and MOUs by the municipality and its client.

8.7. EMPLOYMENT EQUITY

The municipality has an approved Employment Equity Plan and when appointments are made, it is endeavored to comply with the plan. The provision of the Employment Equity Act (55 of 1998) requires that monitoring of the progress made towards the achievement of Employment Equity Plan targets and objectives be ensured. The municipality encourages people living with disabilities to apply in all its adverts. The plan sets out employment equity targets that the municipality must meet and report on annually. One of the challenges faced by the municipality in terms of employment equity is its ability to effectively recruit appropriately

qualified persons who are either living with disabilities or are women in strategic positions and generally.

8.7.1. EMPLOYMENT EQUITY

The provision of the Employment Equity Act (55 of 1998) requires that monitoring of the progress made towards the achievement of Employment Equity Plan targets and objectives be ensured. The municipality encourages people living with disabilities to apply in all its adverts. The plan sets out employment equity targets that the municipality must meet and report on annually. One of the challenges faced by the municipality in terms of employment equity is its ability to effectively recruit appropriately qualified persons who are either living with disabilities or are women in strategic positions and generally.

Table 8.6: Employment Equity (to be updated inline with status que analysis)

Occupational Levels	Male				Female					Foreign Nationals	
	A	C	I	W	A	C	I	W	Total	Male	Female
Top Management	2	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	5	0	0
Middle Management	16	0	0	2	9	0	0	1	28	0	0
Professionally qualified and experienced specialists and mid-management	23	0	0	1	10	0	0	0	34	0	0
Skilled technical and academically qualified workers, junior management, supervisors, foreman, and superintendent	89	0	0	5	30	0	0	3	127	0	0
Semi-skilled and discretionary decision making	40	0	0	4	35	1	0	0	80	0	0

Unskilled and defined decision making	158	0	0	2	82	0	0	0	237	0	0
Total Permanent	328	0	0	15	166	1	0	5	515	0	0
Temporary Employees	5	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	10	0	0
Grand Total	333	0	0	15	171	1	0	5	525	0	0

8.7.2. EMPLOYMENT EQUITY CHALLENGES

Consult relevant Unit

8.8. TRADITIONAL AUTHORITIES

The Municipality does not have traditional Authorities.

8.9. POLITICAL MANAGEMENT TEAM

The political management team (PMT) of MMLM comprises the the mayor, the speaker, and the chief whip. The mayoral council is shown in table 8.7 below.

Table 8.7: List of Councillors

Name of Councillor	Party Rep	Ward	Gender
K Moima	ANC	Ward 1	Male
J Majoko	ANC	Ward 2	Male
SM Motsomane	ANC	Ward 3	Male
E Ramogale	ANC	Ward 4	Male
MS Louw	VF Plus	Ward 5	Female
J Mpedi	ANC	Ward 6	Male
MA Mboweni	ANC	Ward 7	Female
RJ Mahoro	ANC	Ward 8	Male

Name of Councilor	Party Rep	Ward	Gender
AP Mathabathe	ANC	Ward 9	Male
PJ Manaka	ANC	Ward 10	Male
MS Dayimani	ANC	Ward 11	Female
W Botes	DA	Ward 12	Male
J Shokane	ANC	Ward 13	Male
MM Kekana	ANC	Ward 14	Female
SA Sebolai	ANC	PR Councillor	Male
SM Langa	ANC	PR Councillor	Female
P Du Plessis	DA	PR Councillor	Male
DS Motshwene	DA	PR Councillor	Male
HP Louw	DA	PR Councillor	Male
SP Mafuna	DA	PR Councillor	Male
D Phalane	DA	PR Councillor	Male
AS Wagener	DA	PR Councillor	Female
LW Monyela	EFF	PR Councillor	Male
MJ Maswanganyi	EFF	PR Councillor	Male
MM Mothabela	EFF	PR Councillor	Female
MM Mashishi	EFF	PR Councillor	Female
CJ Pretorius	VF Plus	PR Councillor	Male
JP Prinsloo	VF Plus	PR Councillor	Male

Source: Mmlm 2025

- Male Councillors =20
- Female Councillors =08

Table 8.8: Seats Allocations for Political Parties

PARTY	2016	2021
African National Congress	13	14
Democratic Alliance	7	7
EFF	6	4
Freedom Front Plus	2	3

Source: Independent Electoral Commission

The table above clearly confirms the existence of democracy at work in the sense that there is no party with outright majority even though the African National Congress enjoys the highest support of the voters. In this regard, a coalition arrangement is in place.

8,8,1 Political Management Team

(Full-time Councillors)



Cllr MA MBOWENI
Mayor



Cllr MS Langa
Speaker



Cllr MS Dayimani
Chief Whip

8.8.2 Members of Executive Committee



Mayor
Cllr MA MBOWENI

Cllr JP Prinsloo

Cllr LW Monyela

Cllr HP Louw

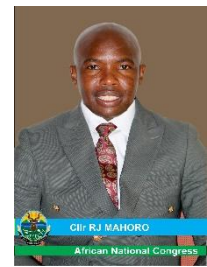
The Council is constituted of the following Councillors.



Cllr SA Sebolai

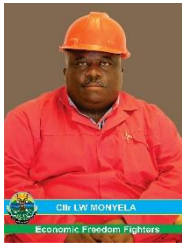


Cllr S Langa



Cllr SM Dayimani

Cllr RJ Mahoro



Cllr LW Monyela



Cllr JP Prinsloo



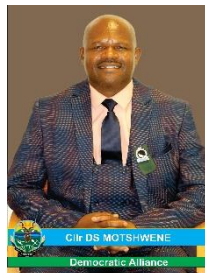
Cllr HP Louw



Cllr W Botes



Cllr Maswanganyi



Cllr DS Motshwene
Mashishi



Cllr E Ramogale



Cllr D Phalane



Cllr CJ Pretorius



Cllr M



Cllr SM MOTSHWANE



Cllr MA MBOWENI



Cllr AP MATHABATE



Cllr AS WAGENER



Democratic Alliance

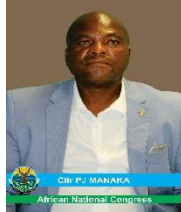
**Cllr SM Motsomane
Cllr MA Mboweni
Cllr AP Mathabathe
Cllr AS Wagener
Cllr M
Mothabela**



Cllr SP Mafuna



Cllr MS Louw



Cllr PJ Manaka



Cllr J Majoko



Cllr J Mpedi



**Plessis
Cllr Shokane**



Cllr MM Kekana



Cllr Moima



Cllr P Du

8.8.4. Top Administrative Structure



Acting Municipal Manager

Mr LC Malema

**Acting Director: Technical Services
Ms B Mthombeni**



**Director: Social & Community
Services
Mr E Mogoane**

**Acting Chief Financial Officer
CI Botha**



**Director: Corporate Services
Mr MP Shika**



**Director: Strategic Planning &
Economic Development
Mr N Nkopodi**

CHAPTER 9: RISK AND DISASTER MANAGEMENT

9.1. DISASTER AND RISK MANAGEMENT BACKGROUND

Disaster Management Act No. 57 of 2002, Amended Disaster Management Act No. 16 of 2015, National Disaster Management Policy Framework of 2005. Please note that their implications are highly critical because thorough proactive planning without taking them into cognizance might have undesirable consequences or devastating or disastrous outcomes either man-made or natural.

The Municipal Systems Act requires that a Municipality must develop an applicable disaster management plan as one of the core components of that IDP. The Waterberg District Municipality has compiled and adopted a disaster management plan. The plan is presented here insofar as Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality fits into the overall plan.

Waterberg District Municipality is responsible Disaster Management services of Modimolle-Mookgophong municipality with effect from 1 July 2017. The fire station of the municipality is based in Modimolle town. (to verify this information with Director Social)

9.2. DISASTER PROFILE

Disaster management is a cross-sectorial task which relates to a wide range of sectors and aspects such as avoiding settlements or investment in high risk locations, construction technologies, water management, health services etc. It is therefore not an issue that can be dealt with by a special project, but it requires compliance of any development's measures with basic principles of disaster prevention and mitigation.

Rather than taking any possible disaster into consideration, one has to focus on risks which are very likely and which justify the efforts of preparedness. Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality is prone to disasters that emanate from veldt and informal settlements fires, floods, drought epidemics etc. Poverty, health and basic services are the main contributors to the high vulnerability of people and are a higher priority in all local municipalities. Appropriate poverty alleviation programmes and infrastructure risk reduction projects are deemed necessary to reduce the vulnerability of communities and to build community resilience to cope with disasters. (

to verify this information with Director Social)

9.2.1. STRUCTURES-LINE OF COMMUNICATION ON RESPONDING TO DISASTER SITUATION

- Bottom-Top response communication lines or channels will be affected for

- responding to disaster situations
- All structures will be fully staffed and equipped with two-way radios to enable them to operate for 24 hours, 7 days per week
- Most important stakeholders within the District
- Six local municipalities;
- SANDF and SAPS;
- All government departments;
- Voluntary Organisations (i.e. Red cross, etc.); and
- Private sector (e.g. NGO, CBO, etc.)
- Specific locations/communities at risk within the municipality

9.4.1 Risk Management Challenges

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality operates under a tight budget and staff constraints, making it difficult to allocate sufficient resources to manage the risk effectively. **Manager to develop a strategic Risk challenges**

Table 9.1: Municipal Top Nine Risks

Failure to attract investors and limited economic Development.
Ageing Infrastructure (Energy, Roads, water & Sanitation Networks
Cyber-attack
Poor liquidity
High unauthorised expenditure, irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure
Negative audit outcome
Theft and Vandalizing of Municipal Assets
High Vacancy Rate
Service Delivery Interruptions

Source: Risk Unit 2026

Table 9.2: INSTITUTIONAL SWOT Place on landscape

STRENGTH	WEAKNESSES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ability to review credible IDP document • Functional Council & Council Committees • Developed Council Resolution Implementation Register • Property Division established • Records Registry Office • Developed Records Management Policy, procedure manual and file plan • Approved and implementation of Risk management charter, policies and Risk management plan. • Functional Risk management committee • Approved Risk Registers and quarterly Risk monitoring reports. • Enterprise wide risk management approach. • Internal Audit policy in place & approved IA plan • Three permanent staff and one intern • Appointed Audit & Performance Audit Committee • Effective and Efficient IT Systems • Operational Microsoft License • Operational switchboard/Customer care and Intranet • Fully equipped server room • Waterberg Integrated District Municipal ICT Forum Established • Approved Communication Strategy • Approved Media and Communication Policy • Effective Social Media 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation of non-budgeted projects • Non-compliance to schedule of meeting • Delay in the implementation of some Council Resolutions • Property division not well placed • Decentralized Records keeping system • Limitation of use of the Electronic Records System • Poor records and non-compliance to Policies, Procedure Manual and File Plan by other Departments. • Appraisal of municipal records & disposal thereof • Ineffective reporting from the risk owners (HOD's). • Inadequate reporting to Risk, Audit Committee and council. • Management not submitting quarterly progress reports on time. • Risk Management awareness and training not conducted regularly. • Risk Management staff component not adequate to discharge its responsibilities • IA plan (audit projects) not consistent with control environment • Current staff component not suitable for servicing the size of the municipality • Inability to complete annual plan • Internet which is very slow • Limitation of space • Poor access to emails, internet and telephone and no firewall

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Presidential & Premiers Hotline • Approved Service Standard • Provision of working resources • Staff development through study assistance. • SCM officials are all fully compliant to the MFMA. • SCM officials are conversant with SCM policy. • Recruitment of skilled staff as per the advertisement (requirements). • Approved indigent policy. • Good billing system. • Supportive government debt forum chaired by Coghsta. • Potential revenue base • Electrical Maintenance plans • Able to supply minimum services to consumers • To deliver services Support of community needs and stakeholders • Able to supply above 70% of the required demand • Partial maintenances • Functional LED forum • Golf Estates • Tourism towns • Strategically located along N1 – One hour from Gauteng and R101 passing through the towns • Hot Water springs • Agriculture base (citrus export/ maize and sunflower/vegetable production/red meat cluster/red meat processing) • Plastic manufacturing 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-attendance of ICT Forum Meetings • Poor Communication • No proper reception area • Delay in the finalization and completion of queries • Backlogs on replacement of meters • Improving our audit opinion. • Inefficient revenue collection. • Shortage of skilled personnel. • Lack of by-law enforcement. • Inability to detect risks early. • Non delivery of statements. • Poor management of staff performance • Reactive maintenance from repeated breakdowns • Ageing infrastructure • Lack of proper resources (vehicles, PPE, machinery, materials and tools) • Non-payment of service providers • Execution of infrastructure projects not in line with approved IDP • Over abstraction of existing aquifers • Inadequate water • High water and electrical losses • Lack tourism & marketing strategy • Inadequate infrastructure capacity (water/sanitation/electricity/roads) • Lack of Land for LED projects • Lack of integration of development programme/projects • Lack of funding to support LED initiatives
---	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High cost of renting Industrial zoned properties
OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Opportune support from sector departments and district municipality • Continuous monitoring of Council Resolution Implementation Register by Municipal Manager, Audit & Performance Audit Committee and Council on quarterly basis (SDBIP) • Assistance and guidance of the Provincial Archivist • Implementation of Electronic Records Systems • Request assistance of Provincial Archivist to appraise records • Appoint dedicated and competent staff for record keeping in other departments. • Workshop of staff in other departments on electronic record keeping on Policies • Procedure Manual and File Plan • Risk management is the standing item on each management meeting as well as on the audit committee meeting • Quarterly Risk management meetings • Quarterly risk monitoring report to Risk Management Committee and Audit Committee. • Fraud responsibility delegated to Risk Management unit. • Risks with financial implications must be budgeted for in order to mitigate the risks. • Sound control environment 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unfunded mandate through projects • Municipal Properties not managed properly • Adverse or Negative Audit opinions • Loss of documents • Negative Audit opinions • Withdrawal of Grants • Litigations • Lack of accountability and ownership by the risk owners. • Lack of understanding of Risk Management by Risk Owners. • Risks with financial implications not mitigated due to lack of budget allocation. • Fraud component misplaced in the corporate department. • Risk/hacking into IT systems • Security is not protected (hacking) • Damage to the ICT equipment • Blackout of system, no incoming calls loss of Revenue • Server room not safe guarded against natural disaster • Poor Audit outcome • Unrest in the community • Poor corporate Branding • Changes introduced by SARS regarding tax compliance.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Share Internal Audit projects as per approved plan amongst available audit team to maintain segregation of duties • Operational MUNSOFT and Payday System, internet , e-mail • Windows 2003 server Office 2010 • Functional VOIP Systems, e-mails and internet • Backup Server • Alignment of ICT data with other Municipalities • Good Governance • Well-coordinated incoming calls • Feedback Mechanism • Training offered by external agencies. • National/Provincial Treasuries assisting with the procedure manual on implementation of the SCM Increased collection rate by motivating customers with incentive, discounts and settlement discount. • Increase in grant as a result of more indigents. • Revenue generation: all properties billed as per valuation roll. • Customers willing to pay as result of accurate billing. • Prepayment system for services • Develop of Road master maintenance plans • Partnering with sector departments • Potential to address strategic projects in IDP to accommodate grants allocations; • Develop water conservation and demand management strategy • Water services development plans 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Job evaluation processes that is taking longer than expected. • Provision of inadequate IT system. • There are unclear roles of contract management between supply chain office & corporate services • Municipal employee strikes • Community protests/unrests • Non-payment culture in community and government department • Longer turn around resulting in service delivery protests • Loosing municipal grants due to under spending • Depleting water resources • Loss of revenue • Lack of municipal land to support SMMEs • None establishment of Community Tourism Association • National departments Implementation of Provincial and National Development Plans without MOU/SLA initiation
--	--



<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Agriculture (High Agricultural potential)• Manufacturing and trade• High tourism potential• Increased public infrastructure• Investment Tourism products and infrastructure development of secondary industries capitalizing on agriculture and mining activities District Development Model (DDM Alignment with the• Proposed Dry-port/SEZ (Special Economic Zone)	
--	--



CHAPTER 10: STRATEGIES PHASE

Strategic intent refers to the purpose that the organisation strives for. These may be expressed in terms of a hierarchy of strategic intent or the framework within which an organisation operates, adopts a predetermined direction, and attempts to achieve its strategic goals. The hierarchy of covers the vision, mission, value system, strategic goals, objectives, outcomes, and targets.

Table 10.1: Strategic Objectives of the Municipality

KPA	Strategic Objectives
Spatial Rationale	Improved Socio-Economic Development.
Basic Services Delivery	Improved Quality of Life
Local Economic Development	Improved Socio-Economic Development.
Financial Viability	Improved Financial Management
Good Governance & Public Participation	Accountable and Transparent Municipality
Municipal Transformation & Organisational Development	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.

Place on landscape

NDP/MTSF	LDP	B2B
An efficient, effective and development oriented public service (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 12: Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated provincial institutions with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality service.	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities
A long and healthy life for all (NDP Chapter 10)	OUTCOME 2: Long and Healthy Life: Limpopo must provide primary health care to reduce mortality rates, filling of critical posts and enhancing health information system.	Delivering Municipal Services
All people in South Africa are and feel safe (NDP Chapters 12 and 14)	OUTCOME 3: All People are Safe: People living in Limpopo must feel safe at home, at school, at work and enjoy community life without fear.	Putting people first
Decent employment through inclusive economic growth (NDP Chapter 3)	OUTCOME 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth: Dealing with challenges of unemployment, Inequality and creating a more inclusive society. Implementation of the NGP and IPAP, Limpopo Industrial Master Plan, Green Economy Plan to create job and grow the economy.	Building capable local government
Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path (NDP Chapter 9)	OUTCOME 5: Skilled and Capable workforce: Limpopo will have access to education and training of the highest quality. The education, training and innovation systems should produce highly skilled labour force.	Building capable local government
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable,	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities

	focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative.	
An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (NDP Chapter 4)	OUTCOME 6: Competitive Economic Infrastructure: Limpopo needs to invest in a network of economic infrastructure designed to support medium and long term economic objectives. The focus should be on road network, rail network	Delivering Basic Services

Place on Landscape

**Table 10.3: Programmes/Projects, Objectives and Strategies per KPA
KPA 1: SPATIAL RATIONALE**

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Spatial Planning and Land Use Management	- Improved Socio-Economic Development.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sustainable economy and improved livelihood. • Provide environment that attract tourism. • Effective and efficient land use. • Regulate and control land use. • Coordinate spatial arrangements. • Advance spatial planning and land use management. • Environmental sustainability. • Promote and protect the environment • Facilitate and assist with the provision and allocation of subsidy government housing

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
LED	Improved Socio-Economic Development.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To provide a long term LED strategic growth of the municipality • Development of LED strategy • Street Trading management • Business registration & licensing • Facilitation of social labour plans • Capacity building for SMMEs • Development of tourism database • Develop tourism strategy • Implementation of CWP • Ensuring functionality of LED forum • Develop LED related policies • Identifying and implementing LED catalytic projects

KPA 2: BASIC SERVICES

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Electrical Network (Electricity – Maintenance and Upgrading)	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improve electrical infrastructure • Increase turnaround time

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for fixing damaged infrastructure • Increase security measures for cable theft
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic
Electrical Network (New Infrastructure)	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement approved electrification projects in townships and town • To provide sustainable infrastructure for electrical supply to Modimolle and Alma community • To advertise bid for maintenance of the substations • To enforce by-laws on illegal connections
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic
Roads and Storm water (Maintenance and upgrading)	Improve Quality of Life.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To track removal of sand on roads and any debris • To ensure maintenance of storm water drainage systems • To develop Road and stormwater master plan • Ram Pilot and state of the roads initiated and still at planning stage

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resaling of internal streets • Paving of ext. 10 ring main roads • Pavements of ext.10main roads • Limpopo low level bridge
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Sanitation (Maintenance and Upgrading)	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refurbishment of the R101 sewer Pump station-Mookgophong
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Water Loss (Unaccounted Water)	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development of WSDP • Procurement of material, equipment and machinery • To develop Water leakage detectors • Repairing of water leakages • Replacement of faulty water meters • To Develop WSDP
Water Supply	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To develop sanitation master plan • To develop water mater plan • To Procure standby water pump generator • Refurbishment of the Vaalwater Pump station and resealing of water towers

Social and Community Services	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic infrastructure development and maintenance.. • Improved access to basic services. • Provision of services for social and economic development.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic
Library and Sport, Arts & Culture	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coordination of sport, art and cultural activities • Well informed communities. • Provision of library services • Maintenance of municipal libraries, and sports facilities.
Traffic, Road Safety & Security	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Safe and secure public roads. • Provision of law enforcement and traffic services • To provide a safe environment for all road users • To ensure protection of municipal assets • To ensure road worthy vehicles • To provide adequate public lighting



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To provide public transport facilities by 2025 To Provide Vehicle Registration and Licensing Services and Learner and Drivers Licenses Services to the Community
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic
Public Transport	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effect implementation of Integrated transport plan Strengthen Relationships with other Spheres of Government
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic
Registering Authority & Licensing	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resuscitation of Mookgophong traffic station Implement surveillance security system Vehicle testing apparatus for Modimolle and Mookgophong centres

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.)	Strategic
Disaster management	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turnaround time to respond to disaster issues • To effectively respond to fire related incidents in the Waterberg District Municipality • To increase awareness of all stakeholders regarding their roles and responsibilities to fire safety, fire avoidance and fire suppression 	
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.)	Strategic
Solid Waste Management	Improve Quality of Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean and healthy communities. • Provision of waste management services. • To rehabilitate the landfill sites to ensure a safe, clean and healthy environment. • To ensure regular refuse collection • To implement recycling campaign • Manage Access Control at landfill site • Proclamation of reviewed policies and by-laws 	

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Landfill site: Weight Bridges, Access control, Recycle houses, Cells, Sinage • Mandatory recycling for institutional, industrial and commercial areas • Review standard operational plan for street cleaning • Broaden participation by SMMEs and marginalised communities in waste sector • Raising community awareness on separation of waste at source • Capacity building on waste recycling initiatives to reclaimers and cooperatives involved in waste recycling and recovery activities
--	--	--

KPA 3: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
LED	To create a conducive environment for business to prosper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development of LED strategy • Street Trading management • Business registration & licensing • Facilitation of social labour plans



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Capacity building for SMMEs • Development of tourism database • Develop tourism strategy • Implementation of CWP • Ensuring functionality of LED forum • Develop LED related policies
--	--	--

KPA 4: FINANCIAL VIABILITY

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.)	Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Expenditure Management	Improved financial management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Review allowances given to employees • Management and reduction of overtime and standby allowances • Intensify the implementation of cost containment measures • Enter and honor payment arrangements with top creditors • Document management and timely recording of invoices • Cash flow management 	
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.)	Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Revenue Management	Improved financial management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sustainable income and improved spending patterns. • Intensify the implementation of credit control and debt collection policy 	

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spending on planned and approved projects • The use of legal department to issue letter of demands • Data cleansing of accounts • Replacement of faulty meters • Introduction of incentives • Effective communication to consumers • Collection of revenue and increase of tax base • Indigent management • Timely and accurate billing • Installation of pre-paid meters • Improve on billing accuracy • Creating community awareness • Identification of potential additional revenue sources • Implementation of pre-paid electricity and water smart meters. • Manage debt collection • Review credit control policy annually. • Revise tariff structures • Development of business plans for funding of identified projects. • Increase vending points and systems for the improvements of pre-paid electrical system services
--	--	---



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switching conventional consumers over to pre-paid system • Upgrading of existing household connections to prepaid meters • Finalization of general valuation roll
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Free Basic Services	Improved financial management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Update and verify indigent register. • Providing indigents with free basic services. • Community awareness
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate objective (1-2 yrs.) Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Budget and Reporting	Improved financial management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development and approval of a fully funded budget. • Facilitate budget formulation through appropriate cost accounting method. • Develop and approve budget related policies. • Strengthen the credit control and debt collection efforts. • Coordinate and manage the development of cost reflective tariffs. • Develop a credible budget • Timeously drafting and submitting monthly expenditure

		<p>and budget statements to internal departments, Council and organs of state.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementing cost accounting. • Monthly cash flow forecasting. • Prepare maintenance budget informed by maintenance plan • Implementation of MSCOA (Municipal Standard Chart of Accounts).
--	--	--

KPA 5: GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Internal Audit	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Promotion of good governance. • Provide assurance on the developed and the implementation of internal controls. • Develop Internal Audit Plan based on the Strategic and Operational risks identified • Implement the Internal Audit Plan and report progress to the Audit Committee on a quarterly basis • Review Audit Action Plan developed by management in addressing findings raised by AGSA



Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Facilitate the effective risk management plans. • Coordinate and facilitate the Risk Assessment within the Municipality • Review and Monitor all approved risk registers regularly • Investigate all fraud cases reported • Develop and review Risk Management Strategy, and Implementation plan
Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To Implement the risk management policies, and plans. • To conduct risk assessment workshop and training for the organisation. • To incorporate Risk management in the SDBIP and performance agreements of section 56 managers. • To ensure that management review their risk registers on time and compile progress reports timeously.
Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To ensure that management review their risk registers on time and compile progress reports timeously.



Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To ensure that risk monitoring is done quarterly by management.
Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To conduct risk management awareness campaigns to all internal stakeholders.
Risk Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To create risk management sub votes in all departments.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Performance Management Plan	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor and oversee the performance of the municipality.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Anti-corruption and fraud	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conduct fraud and corruption awareness regularly
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Council Committee	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Promoting accountability, transparency and ethical standards. Ensure functional Council and its committees. Strengthen the implementation of

		<p>the Rules of Order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implementation of Council Resolutions • Strengthen political oversight.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Communication	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Status of the Communication Strategy of the Municipality. • Improved management of communication services. • Implementation of the communication management plan. • Development and implementation of Communication Strategy.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Public Participation	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Facilitate effective public participation.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Integrated Development Planning	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Informative process plan • Provide strategic direction to the development and review of credible

		Integrated Development Plan • Credible and implementable IDP
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Municipal Performance Management	Accountable and Transparent Municipality	• Planning, Review, Monitoring, Reporting and Evaluation of Institutional Performance

KPA 6: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND ORGANISATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Vehicles & Facilities Management	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provide improved administrative support and effective and reliable Fleet Management. • Servicing of municipal land for residential (middle income house), industrial and business stands
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Human Resource Management and Development	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effective human resources development and management. • Organogram aligned to IDP • Recruitment and selection of qualified and skilled personnel.



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Training and development of employees and Councillors • To have relevant, qualified and competent people in the right positions and correct Departments • Embrace change, Attract top talent, developing Leaders, good retention strategy • Documentation of standard operating procedures (SOP's) • Review overtime and standby system • To finalization Job evaluation and placement of staff • Organisational structure review
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Records and Archiving (Auxillary)	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Proper record keeping and management systems. • Provision of filling, record keeping and distribution services to internal structures. • Implementation of electronic filling and record keeping system (Munadmin). • Archiving and record keeping of municipal documents

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classification of information to ensure safety of documentation • Improve the procedures of distributing and receiving documents • Improve the process and accessing of files from Records
--	--	--

Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Customer Care Management	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Expansion of the usage of electronic Customer Care Management System to all Directorates and also conducting in-house workshops. • Development of Batho-Pele Principles and Standards.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Centralise the function of Electronic Customer Care.
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Labour Relations and EAP	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Review and implementation of approved policies. Conduct building session. Conduct Divisional workshop on HR policies to all employees
Governance and Administration	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Council committees meetings to be held according to the approved calendar Providing administrative and secretarial support to all council committees
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
By-laws	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Budget at least funds to gazette one by-law annually Provide staff to enforce the implementation of by-laws
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Communication and IT	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reliable information technology solutions.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provision of the information technology and communication. • Upgrading of Information Communication Technology ICT. • To Improve and strengthen ICT firewall system • To ensure stable ICT system • To improve ICT system • To ensure effective and efficient work • Establish shift workers system • Align branding of the municipality
Programmes Focus Areas	Programme Objective	Immediate Strategic objective (1-2 yrs.)
Legal support services	Improved Capacity of the Municipal Leadership and Management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Responsive and proactive legal management system. • Development and review of policies and by-laws. • Provision of legal advise and assistance to all internal stakeholders. • Coordinate the contract management services. • To minimize unwarranted litigation and reduce litigation cost



Table 10.4: Risk Mitigation

MMLM Outcomes	Key Risk	Risk Mitigation
Improved Quality of Life	Natural disasters	1. Enforce compliance with building regulations.
	Illegal dumping	1. Enforce municipal by-laws on waste management.
	Maintenance team unable to execute responsibilities due to lack of working tools.	1. Provide adequate and appropriate working tools including fleet.
	Basic services disruption	1. Implement approved basic service delivery plans. 2. Development and implementation of infrastructure maintenance plan
Improved capacity of the municipal leadership and management	Bloated organogram	1. Align the organisational structure with the IDP.
	Redundant staff	1. Conduct job profiling and re-skilling of staff.
	Unsuitable, unqualified and incompetent personnel.	1. Adherence to recruitment and selection policy.
Improved socio-economic development	Poor planning	1. Build and strengthen capacity of the planning unit.
	Land invasion and poor land use.	1. Implementation of Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act.
	Loss of investment opportunities.	1. Upgrade the basic service infrastructure. 2. Timeous approval of applications for development.
	Inability to collect revenue	1. Review and implement the revenue collection policy. 2. Intensify credit control and debt collection measures.

MMLM Outcomes	Key Risk	Risk Mitigation
Improved financial management.	Over-spending on the approved budget	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Strengthen the adherence to budget control measures. 2. Apply activity based costing. 3. Review performance of the various programmes timeously. 4. Implement internal controls.
Accountable and transparent municipality.	Fraud and corruption	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Implementation of fraud and corruption strategies. 2. Enforce the segregation of duties. 3. Continuous updating of the financial disclosure register. 4. Conduct pre-employment screening on all potential candidates. 5. Conduct post transaction reviews and audits.
	Failure to achieve strategic goals.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct employee performance reviews for all levels. 2. Review of the performance management policy.
	Service delivery protests.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct key stakeholder engagement sessions on matters that affect their lives. 2. Monitor and evaluate the performance of ward committees.



Table 10.5: MMLM Measuring Outcomes To work with Manager O-PMS

OUTCOME 1: Improved quality of life.			
OUTCOME STATEMENT: Improving the quality of life by providing basic services in a sustainable manner.			
Outcome indicator	Baseline	5 Year Target	Annual Target
% Access to basic services measured against the following indicators:			
# of Roads and Stormwater Master Plan developed and approved.	New Indicator	1	1
# of kilometres of unsurfaced road graded	New Indicator	20km	20km
# of surfaced municipal road lanes which has been resurfaced and resealed.	New Indicator		
% of reported pothole complaints resolved within standard municipal response time.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of budgeted planned maintenance performed.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of Energy Masterplan and Operations and Maintenance plan reviewed	New Indicator	100%	100%
% Utilisation of Integrated National Energy Plan Grant	100%	100%	100%
% of valid customer applications for new electricity connections processed in terms of municipal service standards	New Indicator	80%	80%
% of callouts responded to within 24 hours	New Indicator	80%	80%
# of households within the municipality that are supplied with electricity according to billing system.	New Indicator		
% of households with electricity connections receiving Free Basic Electricity	New Indicator		
% of electricity losses reduced (technical).	New Indicator		
% of planned outages that are restored to supply within industry standard timeframes	New Indicator		
% Utilisation of Municipal Infrastructural Grant	100%	100%	100%
% Utilisation of Municipal Water Infrastructure Grant	100%	100%	100%
% Utilisation of Expanded Public Works Programme Grant	100%	100%	100%
# of EPWP work opportunities created.	New Indicator	355	355
# of Water Services Development Plan developed and approved	New Indicator	1	1

% of callouts responded to within 48 hours (sanitation/wastewater)	New Indicator	80%	80%
% of callouts responded to within 48 hours (water)	New Indicator	80%	80%
% of drinking water samples complying to SANS241	New Indicator	95%	95%
% of wastewater samples compliant to water use license conditions	New Indicator	80%	80%
% of wastewater effluent volume complying with license conditions (weighted by flows by plant)	New Indicator	50%	50%
% of industries with trade effluent inspected for compliance	New Indicator	50%	50%
% of water losses reduced (technical).	40%	80%	16%
% of planned expansions of waste services and cost recovery implemented	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of identified waste disposal facilities licensed and well managed	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of planned waste minimisation initiatives implemented	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of planned studies on hazardous waste conducted and approved	New Indicator	100%	100%
% planned improvement in institutional capacity for waste management implemented	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of planned education and awareness sessions conducted	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of planned risk assessment, monitoring and evaluation conducted	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of planned research conducted on new emerging issues	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of job opportunities facilitated through environmental management partnership projects.	New Indicator	687	687
% of climate change adaptation and mitigation measures implemented.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of public open spaces maintained	New Indicator		
# of municipal parks maintained.	New Indicator		
% of expenditure on the operations and maintenance of neighbourhood parks and public outdoor spaces in poor and lower-middle income neighbourhoods	New Indicator		
% of expenditure on the operations and maintenance of neighbourhood parks and public outdoor spaces in high income neighbourhoods	New Indicator		

% of municipal cemetery plots available	New Indicator		
# of municipal cemeteries maintained.	New Indicator		
# of municipal parks maintained.	New Indicator		
# of library patrons with paid membership.	New Indicator	60	60
Average number of library visits per library	New Indicator	300	300
# of reports submitted to the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture.	New Indicator	4	4
% utilisation rate of sports fields	New Indicator		
% utilisation rate of community halls	New Indicator		
# of Programmes coordinated	New Indicator		
% of traffic fines collected against registered contraventions	New Indicator	8%	8%
# of periodic roadblocks conducted	New Indicator	60	12
# of motor vehicle license issued against number of applications received	New Indicator	100%	100%
Number of Learners Licenses issued against number of applicants tested	New Indicator	50%	50%
Number of Drivers Licenses issued against number of applications reported for tests	New Indicator	50%	50%
			100%
% of compliance to the signed MOU	New Indicator	100%	
OUTCOME 2: Improved capacity of the municipal leadership and management.			
OUTCOME STATEMENT: To become effective and efficient through strategic human resources management and leadership, records management and information technology communication management.			
Outcome indicator	Baseline	5 Year Target	Annual Target
% Level of capacity to perform the legal mandate measured against the following indicators:			
% of documents received routed to relevant officials within 3 hours of receipt.	New Indicator		
% of documents routed returned for filling within 3 days of signature.	New Indicator		
% compliance with the records management policy	New Indicator		

% progress recorded on the implementation of the electronic records management plan.	New Indicator		
# of top management positions filled.	5	6	6
# of middle management positions filled.	26	28	28
% of budgeted vacant posts filled within 3 months of advertisement	120%	100%	100%
% of municipal skills development levy recovered	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of administrative staff who have declared their financial interests	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of active suspensions longer than three months	New Indicator		
% Compliance with the human resources management policies	75%	100%	100%
% progress recorded towards the implementation of the Performance Management Framework	92%	100%	100%
# of Performance Agreements for senior managers signed	5	6	6
% Functionality of the Employment Equity Committee	New Indicator	100%	100%
R-Value of salary bill of suspended officials	New Indicator		
% Functionality of the Local Labour Forum	95%	100%	100%
# of ICT framework developed and approved	New Indicator	1	1
# of Information Communication Technology Plan.	New Indicator	1	1
# of ICT steering committee meetings held.	1	4	100%
# of soft ICT queries resolved within 48 hours of receipt.	New Indicator	1	1
% of IT policies developed and approved.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of Disaster Recovery Plan developed and approved.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of ICT network upgraded	New Indicator	100%	100%
% compliance of the municipal website to policies and provisions of the Municipal Finance Management Act, 56 of 2003.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of Annual Performance report (APR) submitted to AG for auditing	1	1	1
# of Annual Report submitted to council for consideration	1	1	1
# of Performance Agreements for senior managers signed	5	6	6
% rating of the Institutional performance.	100%	100%	100%
% of repeat audit findings regarding predetermined objectives resolved	New Indicator	100%	100%

% of approved reports submitted to the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% reduction in litigation matters.	New Indicator		
% success rate recorded on litigation matters.	New Indicator		
% of Contract management register updated timeously.	New Indicator		
% of written legal opinions issued to municipal departments.	New Indicator		
% of legal disputes resolved through mediation.	New Indicator		
% of municipal policies reviewed and issued with a compliance certificate.	New Indicator		
% of approved municipal by-laws gazetted.	New Indicator		
% compliance with legislative framework.	New Indicator		
OUTCOME 3: Improved socio-economic development.			
OUTCOME STATEMENT: To ensure the promotion of social and economic development through environmental management, spatial integration and economic transformation.			
Outcome indicator	Baseline	5 Year Target	Annual Target
% Social and economic development measured against the following indicators:			
# of IDP/PMS/Budget Process Plan approved by Council	1	1	1
# of IDP/ Budget Rep Forum Meetings held	2	4	4
# of IDP/ Budget Steering Committee meetings held	2	12	12
# of strategic planning session conducted	1	1	1
% of IDP meetings attendance by sector departments and government parastatals	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of sector departments and government parastatal's plans and programmes incorporated in the IDP	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of new land development applications considered by the Authorised Official.	48	50	50
# of backlog land development applications considered by the Authorised Official.	72	30	30
% of building plans approved within 30 days	50%	100%	100%
# of housing chapter approved by council	New Indicator	1	1
# of informal settlements formalised.	New Indicator	1	1
% of contravention notices issued	New Indicator	100%	100%

% of land application submitted to Council for approval.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of Land Audit report submitted to council	New Indicator	4	4
# of municipal land sale and lease policy reviewed	New Indicator	1	1
Average time taken to finalise business license applications	New Indicator	4 days	4 days
% of Local Economic Development Forums resolutions implemented	100%	100%	100%
% of LED Strategy implemented	New Indicator	5%	5%
# of jobs created through LED initiatives and CWP projects	1100	1200	1200
# of SMME's capacitated	New Indicator	300	300
# of Social Labour Plans facilitated and approved by council	New Indicator	1	1
# of Investment strategy developed	New Indicator	1	1
# of Tourism strategy developed	New Indicator	1	1
% of street traders permit issued from applications received	100%	100%	100%
% of land application submitted to Council for approval.	100%	100%	100%
# of Land Audit review report submitted to council	1	1	1
Development of Land Invasion Policy	New Indicator	1	1
Number of residential properties sold at Extension 36 Modimolle	New Indicator	200	200
Number of Lease Agreements concluded for farms to promote emerging farmers	New Indicator	0	0
Number of stands donated to NGO,NPO, Organ of State for economic activities	New Indicator	5	5
Number of copies of Title Deed paid for and issued/given to beneficiaries	New Indicator	60	60
Acquisition of strategically located land	New Indicator	2	2
Number of funding application submitted to Coghsta for purchase of land for human development	New Indicator	4	4
OUTCOME 4: Improved financial management			
OUTCOME STATEMENT: Improving the financial management of the municipality through the implementation of effective and efficient systems of revenue collection, expenditure and procurement management.			

Outcome indicator	Baseline	5 Year Target	Annual Target
# of Budget related policies reviewed and approved	New Indicator		
% of compliance with the budget preparation and review timetable.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of MFMA Section 71 reports submitted	12	60	12
# of MFMA Section 52 reports submitted	4	20	4
# of quarterly financial statements prepared and submitted to Council	4	20	4
# of Annual Financial statement prepared and submitted timeously to the Auditor General of South Africa.	1	1	1
% of AGSA audit action plan implemented	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of Asset Management Plan implemented.	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of Completed infrastructure assets unbundled	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of assets verification conducted.	2	2	2
% of asset register updated.	100%	100%	100%
# of quarterly stock take conducted.	4	20	4
# of procurement plans developed and approved.	New Indicator		
% of bids opening register published on the municipal website within 2 days of opening.	New Indicator		
% of quotations register published on the municipal website within 2 days of opening.	New Indicator		
% of bids awarded within 90 days after advertisement.	New Indicator		
% of bids awarded published on the municipal website.	New Indicator		
% of quotations awarded published on the municipal website.	New Indicator		
% of bids awarded that are following the supply chain management policy and regulations.	New Indicator		
% of approved capital budget spent.	New Indicator		
% of approved operating budget spent.	New Indicator		
% of approved free basic services budget spent.	New Indicator		
% of allocated Integrated National Energy Programme paid on time.	New Indicator		
% of allocated Finance Management Grant paid on time.	New Indicator		

% of allocated Expanded Public Works Programme paid on time.	New Indicator		
% of allocated Municipal Infrastructure Grant paid on time.	New Indicator		
% of invoices paid within 30 days	New Indicator		
% Revenue collected	65%	85%	85%
% of debt over 90 days collected	60%	60%	60%
# of revenue enhancement strategy approved by Council	0	1	1
# of unbilled areas billed	New Indicator	5	5
% of credit control and debt collection policies implemented	New Indicator	100%	100%
OUTCOME 5: Accountable and transparent municipality.			
OUTCOME STATEMENT: Improving the reputation of the municipality through the promotion of accountability, transparency and professionalism.			
Outcome indicator	Baseline	5 Year Target	Annual Target
% Governance rating of the municipality measured against the following indicators:			
% of progress recorded in the implementation of the communication plan.	New Indicator		
% of municipal website kept updated timeously.	New Indicator		
% of media reviews conducted on news affecting the municipality	New Indicator		
% of media enquiries attended to within 1-hour of enquiry.	New Indicator		
# of Ordinary Council meetings held as per legislation.	11	20	4
% of Council Resolutions monitored timeously.	100%	100%	100%
% of Councillors attending council meetings	100%	100%	100%
% of Councillors who have declared their financial interests	80%	100%	100%
% Functionality of the Municipal Public Accounts Committee	25%	100%	100%
% of ward committees that are functional	80%	100%	100%
% of wards that have held at least one Councillor-convened community meeting	New Indicator	100%	100%
% of allegations of fraud and corruption investigated by Council	100%	100%	100%
% of official complaints responded to through the municipal complaint management system	New Indicator	100%	100%

% of strategic risks mitigated.	0%	100%	100%
% of strategic risks assessed and reviewed.	100%	100%	100%
# of Risk Management Committee meeting held.	New Indicator	60	12
% attendance of the Risk Management Committee by designated members.	80%	100%	100%
% of risk management committee resolutions implemented.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of internal audit plan reviewed and approved by Audit Committee.	1	1	1
% of internal audit plan implemented.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of Audit Committee Methodology/Charter reviewed and approved.	1	1	1
# of Audit Committee meetings held.	4	20	4
% of Audit Committee resolutions implemented.	New Indicator	100%	100%
# of Audit Committee reports submitted to Council.	4	25	5

Table 10.6: Resolutions 2025/2026 merge with 2026/2027 and delete achieved

No	Strategic Planning Session Resolutions
1	The Municipality must enforce bylaws implementation, and where certain bylaws need gazetting, such processes must be concluded, i.e. pending bylaws be concluded.
2	<p>The session resolves to give management support to increase capacity and numbers of officials to close the existing (old structure) structure. This means immediate implementation of the new (macro) organisational structure the 2024-2027. which has suggested solutions needed to enhance service delivery, such as</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Additional traffic officers b. Additional building inspectors c. Additional engineers d. Add the function of facilities manager in technical services e. Additional technologists, new millwrights, and boilermaker f. Additional process controllers per class of the plant in terms of the DWS norms and standards g. Additional business regulations officers h. Manager security in the office of the Municipality Manager's i. Appointment of Annual Financial Statement specialist to assist in the compilation of AFS internally
3.	<p>The commission of Corporate Service recommends that names of the following Departments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The Department of Development & Town Planning to the Department of Strategic Planning & Economic Development (SP&ED) b. The Department Finance to Budget & Treasury Office (BTO)
4.	<p>The session resolves to support management on the following Organisational Structural realignment:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Legal Services division and Performance Management Services (PMS) division to relocate to the Municipal Manager's Office b. Combination of Human Resource Management (HRM) and Human Resource Development (HRD) together c. Property, Fleet and Record Management division in Corporate Services to be split into two and as follows, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Fleet and Record Management to remain in Corporate Services, and ii. Property Management to relocate to Strategic Planning & Economic Development (SP&ED) d. The renaming of the division Customer Care to Customer-care and Institutional & Social Development (ISD).

5.	Support the Municipality's goal of financial viability and to align its revenue collection target to national standards, which is 95%, month-to-month, now, the Municipality is targeting 80% which is 15% below the national standards.
6	Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality Department of Technical Services must develop the infrastructure refurbishment and maintenance plan.
7	<p>The session resolves that there be a bilateral meeting between the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality and Road Agency Limpopo (RAL) for the following purpose: a. To receive detailed information about the RAL's projects being implemented within the Municipality, including i. Project implementers (contractors) ii. Project costs iii. Project timelines.</p> <p>The session resolves that there be a bilateral meeting the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality and South African National Roads Agency Limited (SANRAL), to investigate the following: a. To receive detailed information about the SANRAL's projects being implemented within the Municipality, including</p> <p>i. Project implementers (contractors)</p> <p>ii. Project costs iii. Project timelines.</p>
8.	The session accepts the request of the National Department of Public Works about the multiyear project of the Construction of a Police Station at Roedtan, and the session resolves to have the Municipality incorporate the project in the integrated Development Plan (IDP), 2025/ 2026; 2026/2027 and 2027/ 2028.
9.	<p>The session resolves to have the Municipality work with Transnet in planning/ organising and hosting the Community Awareness campaigns, aimed at building awareness around the following:</p> <p>a. The importance of rail</p> <p>b. The illegal crossing of railroads</p> <p>Pollution and dumping at and around rail lines.</p>
10	The session has noted the non-compliance of the Modimolle, Alma and Vaalwater Waste-Water Treatment Plants, where there is existing non-compliance case (case number CAS 26/07/2024), and resolves that the Municipality increase the capacity of the Waste-water Treatment Plant in the affected areas.
11	The session resolves that the Municipality must implement the plan for law enforcement on spaza shops, and regulation on the spaza trading and to issue out time frame.
12	As echoed by the Mayor's opening address, the session resolved to encourage communities to adopt the Climate Change mitigation and adaptation mechanisms for energy production, especially Solar Energy, capitalizing on the sun-density nature of the

	Waterberg District. In this way, the Municipality contributes to the reduction of Carbon Emissions which exacerbates Climate Change.
13	The session further resolves to commit the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality to the partnership with stakeholders, for programmes about control of pollution including water, soil, and air pollution, which are caused by street litter and irresponsible dumping, and mishandling of waste. Pollution is a cause of Climate Change.
14	The session further resolves to have the Municipality consider the means and ways of effective implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), ensuring that the purposes, aims and objectives of EPWP are met, and that the programme is not being abused by the beneficiaries who have turned EPWP into another social grant scheme. The session encourages management to consider professionalising the Municipality, by encouraging absolute commitment to Public Service by all employees, to respect time and keep to the diving-values of accountability, innovation, integrity, responsiveness, transparency, value for money and collaboration.
15	To address the Municipality's need for additional land for development, the session resolves to support management's plan of looking into available options of acquiring land for development purposes, including avenues such as COGHSTA and its agencies, to unlock developments for industrial, commercial and entertainment. This includes to make concrete the ambitious plans to bring the Mini-Sun-City below the Modimolle Mountain and the biggest Mall between Mall of the North in Polokwane and Menlyn Mall in Tshwane.
16	The session further resolves to support management engagements with the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), Infrastructure South Africa (ISA) for the funding of the business plan that is more than R5 billion, aimed to address the development, rehabilitation and upgrading of infrastructure, and as well the mobility on the old Residential/ Industrial areas and the envisaged new areas for development.
17	The session resolves to increase the governance capacity of leadership through training, in order to enhance the ability of councillors and ward committees to fight crimes such as pirate connections of services, vandalism of infrastructure, poor payment of services, and environmental pollution.
18	To support the vision of the Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality, the 2025/2026 Strategic Planning Session resolves that the Municipality must consider mechanisms to support economic and business activities in the key economic sectors, including the development of the agricultural sector development strategy, and as well as the Tourism Sector Development Strategy, which should serve as a basis for sustainable economic growth.

NOT YET SUBMITTED

CHAPTER 11: PROJECT PHASE

Table 11.1: Municipal Infrastructure Grant

MUNICIPAL INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT FUNDED PROJECTS (MIG)						
No	Project Name	Ward	Term Year	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY	2028/2029FY
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
Total				R	R	R

Table 11.2: Water Services Infrastructure Grant Projects

WATER SERVICES INFRASTRUCTURE GRANT PROJECTS (WSIG8)						
No	Project Name	Ward	Term Year	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY	2028/2029FY
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11				R	-	-
12						
13						
14						
15						
16						
Total				R	R	R

Table 11.3: Municipal Disaster Recovery Grant

MUNICIPAL DISASTER RECOVERY GRANT (MDRG)						
No	Project Name	Ward	Term Year	2025/2026FY	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY
1						
2						
3						
Total				R	-	-

Table 11.4: Integrated National Electrification Programme

INTEGRATED NATIONAL ELECTRIFICATION PROGRAMME (INEP)						
No	Project Name	Ward	Term Year	2025/2026FY	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY
1						
2						
Total				R	R	R

Table 11.5 Energy Efficiency and Demand side Management

ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND DEMAND SIDE MANAGEMENT (EEDM)						
No	Project Name	Ward	Term Year	2025/2026FY	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY
1						-
Total				R	R	-

CATALICTIC PROJECTS FOR MODIMOLLE MOOKGOPHONG 2025-2040

1	Solar Plant/Renewable Energy	Modimolle town, ward 11 Solar Plant	Construction of solar plant facility to generate 300MW	R8,000,000,000.00	Plenary
2	Trans-Africa Port Dry Port	Farms(Modimolle), ward 7	Construction of the Port	R5,000,000,000.00	Plenary

3	ICT - Fibre Optic	Municipal (All wards)	Improve connectivity Upgrade of existing infrastructure	R60,000,000.00	Plenary
4	Megacity	Ward 7, Modimolle	Commercial Precinct	R3,000,000,000.00	Plenary
5	Development Modimolle Mountain	Ward 7, Modimolle	Heritage site Hotel ICC	R1,500,000,000.00	Plenary
Total				<u>R17,560,000,000.00</u>	

Table 11.5: Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (Own Funding) NOT YET SUBMITTED

MMLM-OWN FUNDING						
No	Project Name	Type	Term Year	2025/2026FY	2026/2027FY	2027/2028FY
Mmlm-1						
Mmlm-2						
Mmlm-3						
Mmlm-4						
Mmlm-5						
Mmlm-6						
Mmlm-7						
Mmlm-8						
Mmlm-9						
Mmlm-10						
Total				R	R	R

CHAPTER 12: INTEGRATION PHASE WATERBURG DISTRICT IS YET TO SUBMIT

Table 12.1: MAGALIES PROJECTS

INTEGRATED NATIONAL ELECTRIFICATION PROGRAMME (INEP)						
No	Source	Ward	Term Year	Project Name	Current status	Budget 2025/26
1						
2						
Total						R

Table 12.2: SANRAL

SANRAL						
No	Start Contract	End Contract	Project Number	Project Name	Duration	Budget 2025/26
1						
2						
3						
4						
Total						R

Table 12.3: Coghsta

No	Municipality	Project Name	Project Status	Progress %	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure todate
1	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
2	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
3	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
4	Modimolle/Mookgophong					

5	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
6	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
7	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
8	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
9	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
10	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
11	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
12	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
13	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
14	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
15	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
16	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
17	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
18	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
19	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
20	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
Total					R	0

Table 12.4: Deptment of Education

No	Municipality	Project Name	Project Status	Progress %	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure todate
1	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
2	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
3	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
4	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
5	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
6	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
7	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
Total					R	R

Table 12.5: Department of Health and Social Development

No	Municipality	Project Name	Project Status	Progress %	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure todate
1	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
2	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
3	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
4	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
5	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
6	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
7	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
8	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
Total					R	R

Table 12.7: Department of Public Works (Waterberg Roads)

No	Municipality	Project Name	Project Status	Progress %	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure todate
1	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
2	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
3	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
4	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
5	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
6	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
7	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
8	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
9	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
Total						R

Table 12.8: Department of Public Works (Waterberg Building)

No	Municipality	Project Name	Project Status	Progress %	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure todate
1	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
2	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
3	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
4	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
5	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
6	Modimolle/Mookgophong					
Total					R	R

Table 12.10: Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment

No	PROJECT NAME	PROJE CT TYPE	PROJECT DESCRIPTI ON	PROJE CT STATU S	CONSULT ANT	FUNDING		DURATION	
						FUNDING ORGANIZA TION	BUDG ET	STAR T DATE	END DATE
1									
2									
3									
4									
5									
6									



Table 12.11: Status of Sector Plans

Departments	Approved	Year developed / reviewed
SOCIAL AND COMMUNITY SERVICES		
1. Integrated Waste Management Plan	Available	Approved on April 2022
2. Disaster Management Plan	Not Available	Municipality is using the District Plan
3. Integrated Transport Plan	Not Available	Municipality is using the District Plan
4. Environmental Management Plan	Not Available	Municipality is using the District Plan
5. Air Quality Management Plan	Not Available	Municipality is using the District Plan
CORPORATE SERVICES		
1. Employment Equity Plan	Available	Approved on July 2021
2. Draft HR Strategy	Available	Approved on 2023
3. Workplace Skills Plan	Available	Approved on April 2023
4. Draft Staff Retention Policy/Succession Plan	Available	Developed on 2022
5. Individual Performance Management Policy	Available	Approved on 2023
6. Fraud and Anti-Corruption Strategy	Available	Approved on 2022
7. Draft Public Participation	Available	Developed on 2022
8. Communication Strategy	Available	Approved on 2022
9. Municipal Institutional Plan	Available	-
BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE		
1. Indigent Policy	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
2. Revenue Enhancement Strategy	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
3. Procurement Plan	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
4. 3 Year Financial Plan	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
5. Financial Investment Plan	Not Available	-
OFFICE THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER		
1. Anti-Corruption Strategy	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
2. Risk Management Strategy	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022

3. Performance Management Policy and Framework	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
4. Audit Methodology	Available	Yearly Reviewed 2022
STRATEGIC PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT		
1. SPLUMA By-Law	Available	Approved on 2019
2. LED Strategy	Available	Approved on 2024
3. Land Use Management Scheme	Available	Approved on 2023 gazette on May 2023
4. Spatial Development Framework	Available	Approved on 2021 to be reviewed
5. Housing Chapter (Plan)	Not Available	To be Developed
6. Tourism Strategy	Not Available	To be Developed by 2026/2027
7. Agricultural Strategy	Not Available	To be Developed by 2026/2027
TECHNICAL SERVICES		
1. Energy Master Plan	Available	Approved on 2022
2. Roads & Stormwater Master Plan	Not Available	Outdated and was developed on 2015
3. Water Master Plan	Not Available	-
4. Municipal Infrastructure Investment Framework	Not Available	-

MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S QUALITY CERTIFICATE

I, LC Malema. As the Acting Municipal Manager of Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality, hereby certify that:

The draft IDP/Budget 2026/2027 for Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality has been prepared in accordance with the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000, Municipal Finance Management Act 56 of 2003 and Regulations made under the Acts.

**NAME : LC MALEMA
ACTING MUNICIPAL MANAGER**

SIGNATURE : _____

DATE : _____

APPROVED/NOT APPROVED

**NAME: : MA MBOWENI
MAYOR**

SIGNATURE : _____

DATE : _____

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY



FINAL 2026/2027 INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN DOCUMENT